



XJ
OWNER'S HANDBOOK

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

Publication Part No. JJM 10 02 34 161

Introduction

ABOUT THIS HANDBOOK

Please take the time to study all of the owner/operator literature supplied with your vehicle as soon as possible.

IMPORTANT

The information contained in this handbook covers all vehicle derivatives and optional equipment, some of which will not be fitted to your vehicle. Due to printing cycles this handbook may include descriptions of options before they become generally available.

The vehicle options, hardware and software, are designed for the market in which the vehicle is intended for original sale. If the vehicle is registered or used in another geographical area, it may need modifications to suit local requirements. Jaguar Land Rover Limited is not responsible for the cost of any modifications. Warranty conditions may be affected.

The information contained in this publication was correct when it went to print. Subsequent vehicle design changes may result in a supplement being added to the literature pack. Updates can also be viewed on the internet site, <http://www.ownerinfo.jaguar.com>.

In the interest of development, the right is reserved to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice and without incurring any obligations. This publication, or part thereof, may not be reproduced nor translated without our approval. Errors and omissions excepted.

SYMBOLS USED IN THIS HANDBOOK



Safety warnings indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of personal injury.



Cautions indicate either a procedure which must be followed precisely, or information that should be considered with great care, in order to avoid the possibility of damage to your vehicle.



This recycling symbol identifies those items that must be disposed of safely in order to prevent unnecessary damage to the environment.



This symbol indicates items that must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from your Retailer/Authorised Repairer and/or your local authority.



This symbol identifies those features that can be adjusted, disabled or enabled by your Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

©Jaguar Land Rover Limited 2014.

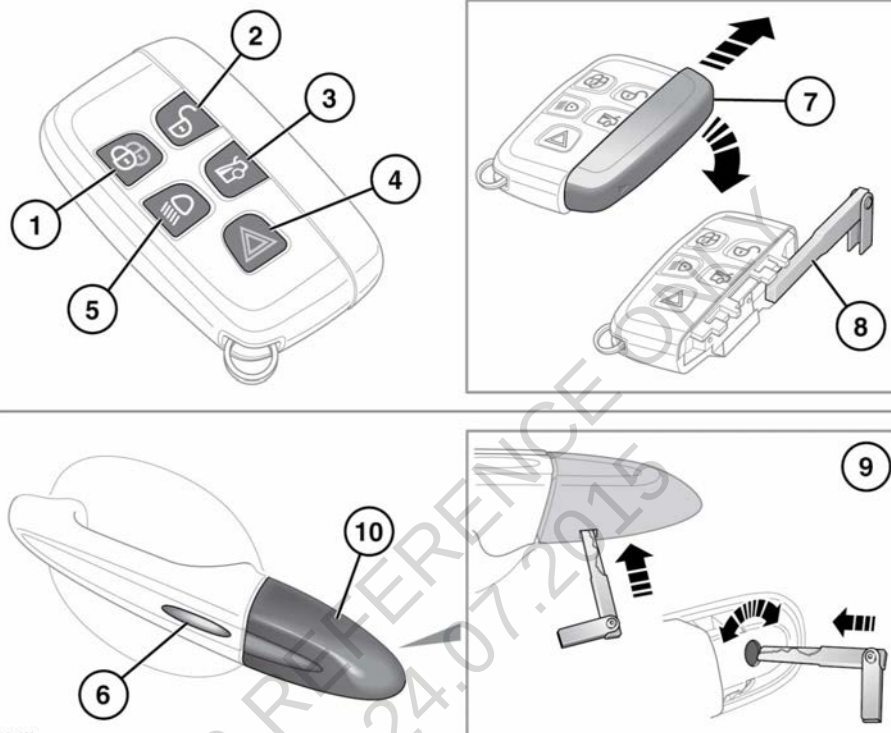
All rights reserved.

Contents

Introduction.....	2	Media overview.....	107
Entering the vehicle.....	4	AM/FM Radio.....	114
Exiting the vehicle.....	9	DAB radio.....	116
Front seats.....	13	Portable media.....	118
Rear seats.....	16	Television.....	126
Head restraints.....	19	DVD player.....	128
Steering wheel.....	22	Dual view.....	130
Seat belts.....	23	Headphones.....	132
Child safety.....	28	Rear seat screens.....	133
Airbags.....	35	Climate and comfort.....	136
Instrument panel.....	40	Parking features.....	145
Warning lamps.....	44	Cameras.....	152
Exterior lights.....	49	Phone.....	156
Interior lights.....	52	Bluetooth®.....	161
Wipers and washers.....	54	Navigation.....	162
Mirrors.....	56	Voice control.....	175
Garage door opener.....	58	Connectivity.....	177
Windows.....	60	InControl.....	179
Storage compartments.....	63	Fuel and refuelling.....	184
Luggage compartment.....	65	Maintenance.....	193
Starting the engine.....	70	Vehicle cleaning.....	199
Intelligent stop/start.....	72	Fluid level checks.....	203
Gearbox.....	74	Vehicle battery.....	212
Stability control.....	76	Fuses.....	216
Suspension.....	78	Tyres.....	226
Brakes.....	79	Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....	231
Automatic speed limiter (ASL).....	81	Tyre repair kit.....	233
Cruise control.....	82	Wheel changing.....	237
Adaptive cruise control.....	83	Vehicle recovery.....	240
Driving modes.....	90	After a collision.....	241
Driving aids.....	92	Vehicle labels.....	243
Progress control system.....	97	Technical specifications.....	244
Touch screen - Home.....	100	Type approval.....	252
Touch screen - My home.....	102	Index.....	260
Touch screen - Extra features.....	104	Controls overview.....	280
Touch screen - Settings.....	106		

Entering the vehicle

UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE



To prevent accidental or unauthorised operation, never leave children or animals unattended in the vehicle. The vehicle can be operated when the Smart key is inside the vehicle.



While a door is open, the locking latch is exposed. Do not attempt to manually close the latch as it may also automatically 'soft close' and trap items or body parts.

1. Lock: Press the lock button to secure the vehicle. The vehicle can be Single or Double locked. See 9, SINGLE LOCKING and 9, DOUBLE LOCKING.

2. Unlock: Your vehicle can be unlocked using either Single or Multi-point entry. When Single point entry is enabled, the first press unlocks the driver's door and enables the other doors to be opened from the inside. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice to indicate that the vehicle is unlocked and the alarm has been disarmed. A second press unlocks the passenger doors and the luggage compartment.

Entering the vehicle

If Multi-point entry is enabled, press briefly to unlock all of the doors and the luggage compartment and to disarm the alarm. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice to indicate that the vehicle is unlocked and the alarm has been disarmed.

To change from Single to Multi-point entry (or vice versa), press both the lock and unlock buttons simultaneously for 3 seconds. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice to confirm the change.

The change can also be achieved using the Instrument panel menu.

3. Press to open the luggage compartment. The vehicle security system will remain active for the period that the luggage compartment is open but the intrusion and inclination sensing systems will be inhibited. Door and bonnet security will remain active.

The security system will re-arm to its previous state when the luggage compartment is closed.

4. Panic alarm: Press and hold for 3 seconds, or press 3 times within 3 seconds, to activate the horn, siren and hazard lamps. After 5 seconds, the alarm can be cancelled by pressing the panic alarm button for 3 seconds or by pressing the button 3 times within 3 seconds.

The emergency alarm will also be cancelled if the vehicle detects a valid Smart key when the START/STOP button is pressed.

5. Press to switch on the approach illumination for up to 120 seconds. The illumination time is set using the exit delay switch. Pressing the button again or operating the starter button will switch the approach lamps off. See **49, LIGHTING CONTROL**.

6. Keyless locking button. See **10, KEYLESS LOCKING**.

7. Emergency key cover: Slide and remove the cover to expose the emergency key.

8. Emergency key: Slide the key to remove and then unfold the handle.

9. To unlock or lock the door in an emergency (if the Smart key or Keyless entry fail to operate):

- Insert the emergency key blade into the slot in the door lock cover.
- Carefully lift the key blade to lever the cover off the retaining clips.
- Insert the key blade into the exposed lock to operate.

To lock: Make sure that all of the doors are closed, then turn the key blade towards the front of the vehicle and release. This will lock all of doors but will not arm the alarm.

To unlock: Turn the key blade towards the rear of the vehicle and release to unlock the door. If the security system is disarmed, all the doors and the luggage compartment will be unlocked.

Note: If the vehicle is unlocked using the emergency key blade with the security system armed, the alarm will sound when a door is unlocked. To deactivate the alarm, press the unlock button on the Smart key or press the engine START/STOP button with the Smart key inside the vehicle.

10. To replace the door lock cover:

- Align the cover to engage the top 2 clips.
- Push the bottom of the cover to engage the lower clip.

Entering the vehicle

KEYLESS ENTRY



Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should make sure that the device is kept at a distance of at least 22 cm away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and device.

For information concerning the locations of the security system transmitters, see 250, **SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS**.



If a Smart key is lost, a replacement can be obtained and reprogrammed to the vehicle by a Retailer/Authorised Repairer. Notify a Retailer/Authorised Repairer as soon as a Smart key is lost or stolen and have the remaining Smart key(s) reprogrammed.

Keyless entry allows the vehicle to be unlocked and disarmed by simply operating the door handle, provided the Smart key is within 1 metre.

The Smart key needs only to be on the driver's person; it does not need to be exposed or handled. However, the Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container or is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including when inside a laptop bag), game console etc. Keep the Smart key clear of such devices when attempting Keyless entry or Keyless starting.

Note: Keyless entry will unlock the vehicle in accordance with the current security setting (Single-point or Multi-point entry). However, if Single-point entry is the current setting and a door other than the driver's door is opened first, all doors will unlock.

When all open doors have been closed, the system will search the vehicle interior for a valid Smart key. If one is not detected, **SMART KEY NOT FOUND, PLACE AS SHOWN** will be displayed in the message centre. Find the Smart key and place it against the fascia, below the auxiliary switch pack, see 71, **KEYLESS START BACKUP**.

The security system fitted to your vehicle is Thatcham category 1 approved, and meets EU regulations 97/116 and EU directive 95/56 EC.

GLOBAL OPENING

Press and hold the unlock button for 3 seconds. The vehicle will unlock and the alarm will be disarmed immediately. After 3 seconds, all of the windows will open. This feature can be enabled/disabled via the Instrument panel menu.

To stop the windows from opening/closing during the Global opening/closing operation, press any of the buttons on the Smart key or operate the driver's window switch. To stop a particular window from opening, operate the relevant window switch.

Note: Global opening is disabled on a window if the electric sun blind is in the up position.

For Global closing, see 10, **GLOBAL CLOSING**.

DRIVE-AWAY LOCKING

Locks all of the doors when the vehicle exceeds 8 km/h (5 mph). Use of the central locking/unlocking buttons (see 280, **DRIVER CONTROLS**) will override the Drive-away locking feature for the rest of a journey.

If a door is individually unlocked and opened, all of the doors will relock when the open door is subsequently closed.

Note: Drive-away locking can be enabled/disabled via the **Settings** area of the instrument panel menu.

Entering the vehicle

CONVENIENCE MODE

When the door is opened using either the Smart key or Keyless entry, the vehicle's electrical system initiates the Convenience mode. The following systems become functional:

- Driver position memory.
- Seat and steering column adjustment.
- Interior and exterior lighting.
- Message centre.
- Auxiliary power socket.

STEERING COLUMN LOCK

Your vehicle is fitted with an electronic steering column lock. The column unlocks when a Smart key is detected inside the vehicle.

If any malfunction of the steering column lock occurs, **STEERING COLUMN LOCKED** will be displayed in the message centre. If this occurs:

1. Lock and then unlock the vehicle using the Smart key.
2. Try again to unlock the steering column lock, by turning the steering wheel gently to the left and right while locking and then unlocking the vehicle using the Smart key.
3. If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

REMOTE KEY FOB CARE

⚠ To prevent accidental operation, which may result in an injury, never leave the Smart key in the vehicle if children or animals are also left in the vehicle.

ⓘ Do not expose to extremes of heat, dust, humidity or allow contact with fluids. Do not leave the transmitter exposed to direct sunlight.

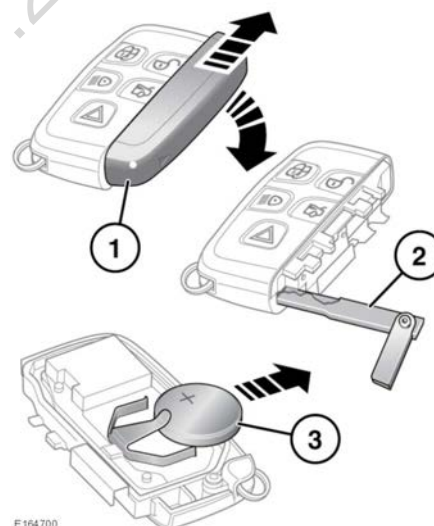
The emergency key number is recorded on an attached label. Peel off the label and attach it to the designated area on the Security Card, supplied in the literature pack. Keep the Security Card safe, but not in the vehicle.

The operational range of the Smart key will vary considerably depending on atmospheric conditions and interference from other transmitting devices.

Note: The radio frequency used by the Smart key may be used by other devices (e.g. medical equipment). This may prevent the Smart key from operating correctly.

REMOTE KEY FOB BATTERY REPLACEMENT

When the battery needs replacing, there will be a significant decrease in the effective range and the message **SMART KEY BATTERY LOW** is displayed in the Message centre.



To replace the battery:



Entering the vehicle

1. Slide the cover in the direction of the arrow until a click is heard. Remove the cover.
2. Use the emergency key blade to separate the Smart key body.
3. Fit a new and unused CR2032 type battery (available from a Retailer/Authorised Repairer), with the positive (+) side upwards.

Note: Handle a new battery with the outer edge. Avoid touching the top and bottom faces of the new battery, as moisture/oil from your fingers can reduce battery life and corrode the contacts. If skin contact is made clean with a lint free cloth.

Note: If the low battery warning does not extinguish this indicates that the replacement battery is not in a new and unused condition.

Refit the parts in the reverse order, ensuring that they click securely into place.



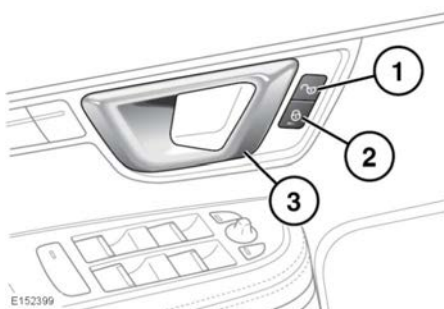
Battery disposal: Used batteries must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from a Retailer/Authorised Repairer and/or a local authority.

Exiting the vehicle

DOOR LOCKS AND RELEASE LEVERS



While a door is open, the locking latch is exposed. Do not attempt to manually close the latch as it may also automatically 'soft close' and trap items or body parts.



1. Unlock:

- Press any unlock button to unlock all of the doors. Alternatively, pull either front door release handle (3) once to unlock all of the doors.
- Pull either rear door release handle once to unlock the individual rear door.

Note: The unlock button is inhibited when the vehicle is locked with the Smart key.

2. Lock: With all the doors closed, press any lock button to lock all of the doors.

3. Door release handle: Pull to unlock and open the door. If the door is locked, pulling either front door handle once will unlock all of the doors. Pulling either rear door handle once will unlock the individual rear door.

Note: When activated, the Rear child security switch (located on the driver's door switch pack) will inhibit the rear door lock and unlock buttons and the rear door release handles. See 28, CHILD SAFETY LOCKS.

SINGLE LOCKING

Press the lock button briefly. Single locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors and luggage compartment being opened from outside of the vehicle. The doors can be unlocked and opened from inside the vehicle. The hazard warning lamps will flash once as confirmation.

DOUBLE LOCKING



Never Double Lock the vehicle with people, children or pets inside. In the event of an emergency they would be unable to escape, and the emergency services would be unable to release them quickly.

When the vehicle is Double locked the doors cannot be opened, either from inside or outside the vehicle.

Press the lock button twice within 3 seconds. Double locking secures the vehicle and prevents the doors and luggage compartment from being unlocked or opened from inside or outside of the vehicle, except with the correct Smart key. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice (with a long second flash) and an audible warning will sound as confirmation.



The audible warning can be enabled/disabled by your Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

LOCK CONFIRMATION

If you are uncertain whether the vehicle is locked and armed (either by Single or Double locking), press the lock button again. The hazard warning lights will flash to indicate and confirm the current lock status.

Note: If the vehicle is **not** already locked and armed, pressing the lock button will Single lock the vehicle. Press again to Double lock.

Exiting the vehicle

MISLOCK

If one of the doors, the bonnet or the luggage compartment are not shut fully when the vehicle is locked using the Smart key or by Keyless locking, the vehicle will not lock and 2 warning tones will sound. Check that all doors, the bonnet and the luggage compartment are closed properly and lock the vehicle again.

If one or more of the doors fails to lock properly when a lock attempt is made using the Smart key, 2 warning tones will sound and one or more of the doors may not be locked.

Note: Operating the interior or exterior door handles, while attempting to unlock, lock, or change the child lock status of the vehicle (including Drive-away locking), may cause the security system to ignore any unlock, lock, or child lock requests.

GLOBAL CLOSING

 **Make sure that no children, pets, or obstructions are in any open aperture before operating Global closing.**

Make sure that all of the doors are closed, then press and hold the lock button on the Smart key for 3 seconds. Alternatively, press and hold the lock button on the door handle. The vehicle will single lock and the alarm will be fully armed immediately. After 3 seconds, all of the windows will close.

Note: If the button on the door handle is released before the windows have fully closed, the windows will stop closing.

KEYLESS LOCKING

 Remove all Smart keys and emergency key blades from the vehicle when it is left unattended. This will help prevent the alarm being disarmed and therefore help prevent theft.



The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including when inside a laptop bag), game console etc.

The vehicle will not lock automatically.

To Single lock the vehicle, press the button on the door handle once. The hazard warning lamps will flash once as confirmation (in some markets, an audible warning will sound).

To Double lock the vehicle, press the button twice within 3 seconds. The hazard warning lamps will flash twice (with a long second flash). In some markets, a double audible warning will sound.

Note: Keyless locking will only activate if all of the doors, bonnet and the luggage compartment are closed and the Smart key is outside the vehicle. If the above conditions are not met, 2 audible error warnings will sound.

FULL ALARM

To set full alarm protection, make sure that all the windows and the sunroof are closed. On vehicles fitted with Double locking, press the lock button twice within 3 seconds. The hazard warning lights will flash twice to confirm the alarm state and, in some markets, an audible tone will sound.

Note: If the alarm is armed and a window or the sunroof are left open, the alarm may sound due to movement of air currents, detected by the intrusion sensors in the front interior light console.

The intrusion sensors can be temporarily disabled, for the next time the vehicle is locked, via the Vehicle Set-up area of the Instrument panel menu.

Exiting the vehicle

PERIMETER ALARM

To set Perimeter alarm protection, press the lock button. The hazard warning lamps will flash to confirm the alarm state.

BATTERY-BACKED SOUNDER

In certain markets, a separate battery backed sounder is fitted. This device will sound the alarm if the vehicle battery or the alarm sounder is disconnected when the security system is armed.

DEACTIVATING THE ALARM WHEN TRIGGERED

If the alarm has been triggered, it can be deactivated by any one of the following methods:

- Pressing the unlock button on the Smart key.
- Opening a door using Keyless entry.
- Pressing the START/STOP button with a valid Smart key present.

TILT SENSOR

The Tilt sensor detects any change in the vehicle's angle to the ground. When the alarm is armed and the vehicle Double locked, any change in the vehicle's angle will activate the tilt alarm.

Note: The tilt sensors can be temporarily disabled, for the next time the vehicle is locked, via the Vehicle Set-up area of the Instrument panel menu.

PASSIVE ARMING

This vehicle is fitted with a passive arming feature which can, if enabled, automatically arm the anti-theft system. Passive arming will automatically arm the perimeter alarm system 60 seconds after the driver's door is closed, provided all doors, bonnet and luggage compartment are closed, the ignition is switched off and there are no valid Smart keys inside the vehicle.

Passive arming will not lock the vehicle, although access to the luggage compartment via the interior or exterior release buttons will be prevented and the fuel filler flap will be locked.



Passive arming can be enabled/disabled by your Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

AUTOMATIC RE-LOCKING AND RE-ARMING OF THE ALARM

Automatic relock and re-arm is a feature which, if enabled, automatically relocks the vehicle and arms the anti-theft system.

If the vehicle is in a locked and armed state and the remote unlock button is pressed, but none of the doors or the luggage compartment are opened within 40 seconds, the vehicle will automatically relock all the doors and the luggage compartment and will re-arm the alarm system.

Note: Automatic relocking and arming will only relock and arm to the last locked and armed state.



Automatic relocking and re-arming can be enabled/disabled by your Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

Exiting the vehicle

SENSOR FAULTS

If the security systems detect a fault with one of the security sensors, an error tone will sound from the alarm after the vehicle is unlocked and disarmed. If this condition occurs, please visit your Retailer/Authorised Repairer for rectification.

EMERGENCY LOCKING

In the event of the battery discharging or a fault occurring with the Keyless locking system, the doors must be locked manually.

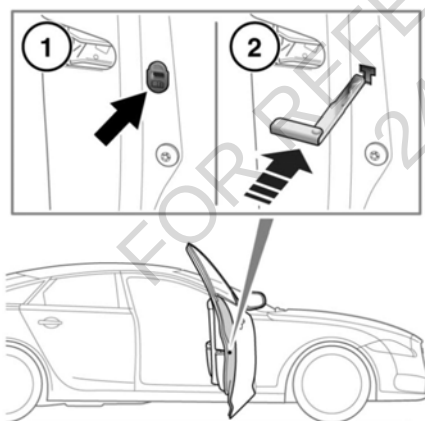
All unlocked doors, except the driver's door, should be locked using the following procedure. Finally the driver's door should be locked via the external door lock. See **4, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE**.

Note: Do not leave the emergency key blade in the vehicle at any point during the emergency locking procedure.

1. Open the door and locate the emergency lock access cover. There is a small chamfer on the back of the cover; using a finger nail, push up and away from the door to remove the cover.
2. Insert the emergency key blade firmly into the emergency lock until a click is heard. The emergency key blade can now be removed.

Note: The emergency key blade is stowed in the Smart key. See **4, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE**.

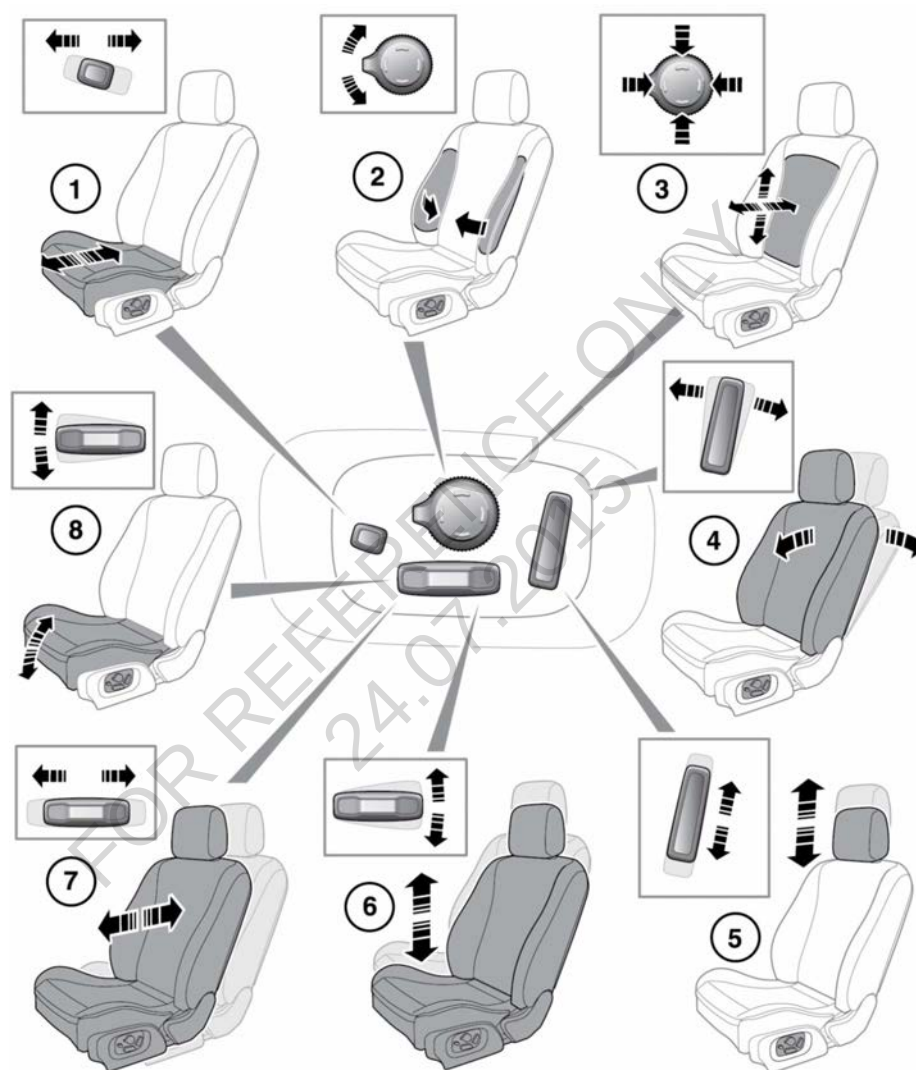
3. Replace the emergency lock access cover by fitting the lower clip first, then pushing the cover until it clicks into place.
4. Close the door and check to make sure the door is locked. Repeat the procedure for all other unlocked doors.



E164171

Front seats

ELECTRIC SEATS



E167175



Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving. Doing so could cause a loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

1. Cushion length adjustment.
2. Bolster adjustment (inflate/deflate).

Front seats

3. Lumbar support adjustment.
4. Seatback angle adjustment.
5. Head restraint height adjustment.
6. Height adjustment.
7. Forward and rearward adjustment.
8. Cushion front tilt adjustment.

To adjust the seats, the Smart key must be in the vehicle and the ignition switched on.

If an obstruction is encountered while the seat is in motion, the seat will stop moving and further movement will be restricted until reset.

To reset the seat:

1. Remove the obstruction.
2. Adjust the seat to the point where movement is restricted.
3. Press and hold the switch for at least 2 seconds to override the restriction.

PASSENGER SEAT AWAY

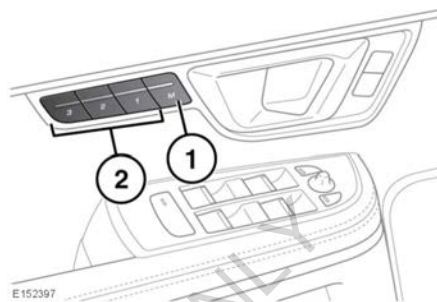


E135027

When fitted, the driver can adjust the position of the front passenger seat. Press for forward or rearward adjustment.

Note: Passenger seat away will not function if the front passenger seat belt is fastened.

DRIVING POSITION MEMORY



1. Memory set button.
2. Memory presets.

Once you have adjusted the driver's seat, steering column (22, **ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL**) and exterior mirrors (56, **EXTERIOR MIRRORS**) the vehicle can memorise these settings using the driver memory buttons.

Once the passenger seat has been adjusted, these settings can be memorised using the passenger memory buttons.

1. Press the memory set button to activate the memory function.
2. Press one of the preset buttons within 5 seconds to memorise the current settings. For the driver's settings, **MEMORY 1 (2 or 3) SETTINGS SAVED** will be displayed on the message centre accompanied by an audible chime to confirm the settings have been memorised.

A seat position can only be memorised during the 5 second period.

Any existing settings for a memory preset will be over-written when programming a memory position.

Front seats

RECALLING A MEMORISED POSITION

Press the appropriate memory preset button (for the driver's settings, **MEMORY 1 (2 or 3) SETTINGS RECALLED** will be displayed in the Message centre).

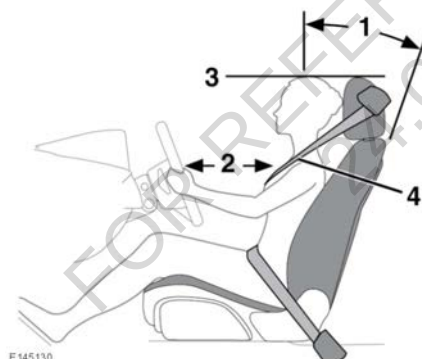
RESTRICTED SEAT TRAVEL

If an obstruction is encountered while the seat is in motion, the seat will stop moving and further movement will be restricted until reset.

To reset the seat:

1. Remove the obstruction.
2. Adjust the seat to the point where movement is restricted.
3. Press and hold the switch for at least 2 seconds to override the restriction.

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



The driver and front passenger must not ride with the seat fully reclined.



Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is moving.

The seat, head restraint, seat belt and airbags, all contribute to the protection of the user.

Correct use of these components will give you greater protection, therefore you should observe the following points:

1. Sit in an upright position, with the base of your spine as far back as possible. To achieve optimum benefit of the seat belt in the event of an accident, do not recline the seat excessively.
2. Do not move the driver's seat too close to the steering wheel. Ideally, a minimum distance of 254 mm is recommended between the breastbone and the steering wheel airbag cover. Hold the steering wheel in the correct position with your arms slightly bent.
3. Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centre line of the head.
4. Position the seat belt so that it is mid-way between your neck and your shoulder. Fit the strap tightly across your hips, not across your stomach.

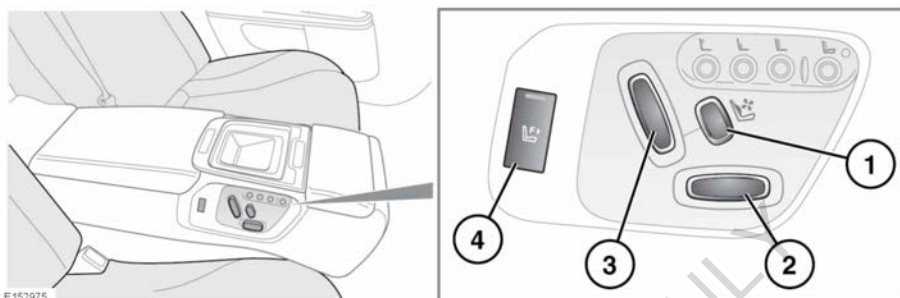
Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and enables you to maintain full control of the vehicle.

TOUCH SCREEN SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT

The front and rear seat heating or cooling temperature and the driver's remote adjustment of the seating positions, can all be controlled from the front Touch screen. See **141, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.

Rear seats

EXECUTIVE CLASS SEATS



1. Lumbar support adjustment.
2. Forward and rearward seat adjustment.
Note: This is a 4-way switch when used to operate the front passenger seat. The switch is then used to adjust the forward and backward movement plus the raising and lowering of the seat. See item (4).
3. Seatback angle adjustment.
4. Front passenger seat adjustment: Press to select and then use switches (2) and (3) to make the required adjustments.

2. Memory set button.
3. Memory presets.

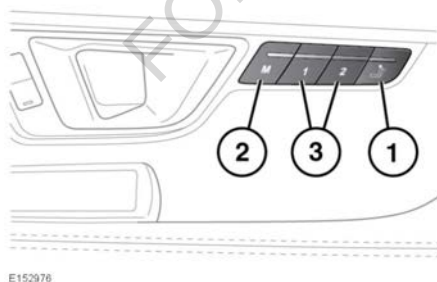
Once you have adjusted the rear seats (see **16, EXECUTIVE CLASS SEATS**) the vehicle can memorise these settings using the rear seat memory buttons.

1. Press the memory set button to activate the memory function.
2. Press one of the preset buttons within 5 seconds to memorise the current settings.

A seat position can only be memorised during the 5 second period.

Any existing settings for a memory preset will be over-written when programming a memory position.

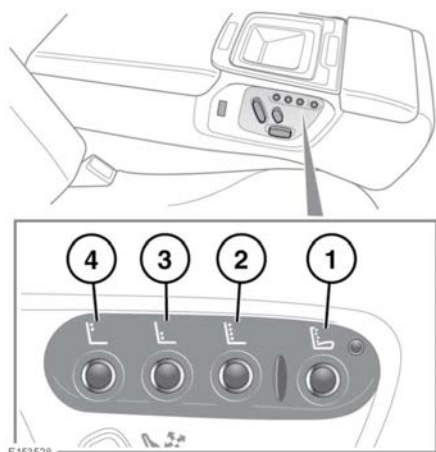
REAR SEAT POSITION MEMORY



1. Press and hold the switch to return the rear seat to the home position to allow easier entry and exit.

Rear seats

REAR SEAT MASSAGE



1. Massage: Press to switch the massage function on/off.
2. Press to select rolling wave.
3. Press to select lumbar wave.
4. Press to select shoulder wave.

Note: The massage programs have a 10 minute cycle, which will need to be re-selected for repeated use.

The Rear seat massage can also be set via the front Touch screen and rear seat screens. See **142, SEAT MASSAGE**.

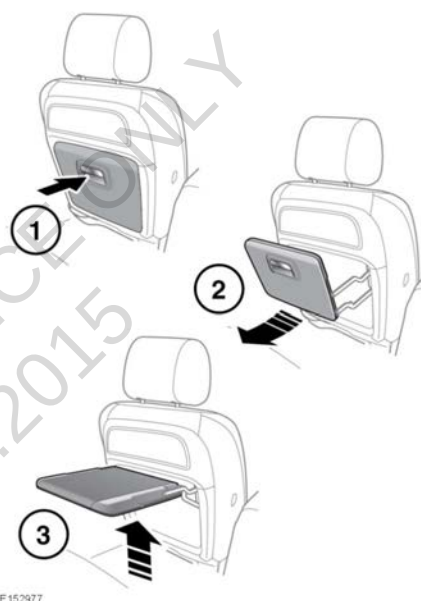
REAR SEAT SCREEN - SEAT COMFORT

The rear seat heating or cooling temperature and rear seat massage can all be controlled from the rear screens. See **141, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.

FOLDING TABLE

⚠ If the vehicle is involved in an accident, or subject to sudden braking or direction change, loose items on the table can cause serious injury.

! Stow the table when not in use.



To open the table: Pull the table by the handle (1) and then pull the underneath front edge of the table (2) to guide it in to its final horizontal position (3).

To close the table: Pull the front edge underneath of the table down and then push the table into the closed position.

REAR SEAT SAFETY

⚠ Never allow passengers to travel in the luggage compartment under any circumstances.



Rear seats



All vehicle occupants should be seated correctly, and wear a seat belt at all times when the vehicle is in motion.



Do not cover the ventilation vents located in the parcel shelf behind the rear head restraint.

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

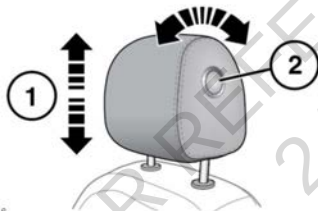
Head restraints

FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS

- ⚠ Adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is above the centre line of the head. An incorrectly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of death or serious injury in the event of a collision.
- ⚠ It is possible to swivel the head restraint forwards or backwards. For greater protection in the event of a collision, the head restraint should be adjusted so that it is as close to the back of the head as is practical.
- ⚠ Never adjust the head restraint while the vehicle is in motion.

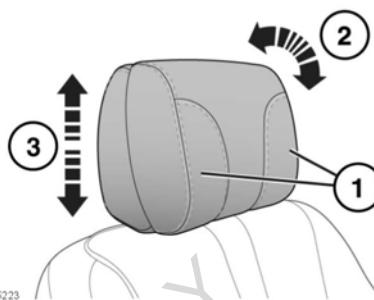
ELECTRIC FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS

Follow the instructions for the design of head restraint fitted to your vehicle.



1. To adjust the height of the head restraint, see 13, **ELECTRIC SEATS**
2. To adjust the angle of the head restraint, press the locking button on the side of the restraint and tilt to the desired position.

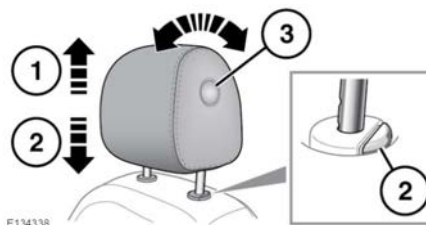
Note: There is no angle adjustment on a head restraint where a DVD screen is fitted.



1. Pull the wing heads forward into the first or second position.
2. Rotate the head restraint to adjust the angle.
Note: There is no angle adjustment on a head restraint where a DVD screen is fitted.
3. To adjust the height of the head restraint, see 13, **ELECTRIC SEATS**

Note: It is not possible to remove the electric front head restraints.

MANUAL FRONT HEAD RESTRAINTS



1. To raise, pull the restraint upwards, it will click and lock in position.
Note: Do not try to raise the head restraint further than the third adjustment position.
2. To lower, depress the locking collar and push down on the restraint.
3. To adjust the angle of the head restraint, press the locking collar on the side of the restraint and tilt to the desired position.

Head restraints

Note: The head restraint can only be removed if the seat is moved forward or back to create more space.

To remove the head restraint, adjust the angle of the back of the seat forward or back to create more space. Press both locking collars at the same time and lift the restraint out of the seat.

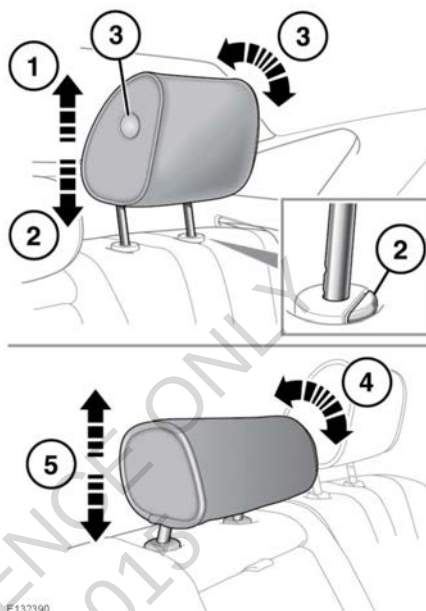
⚠ Do not drive or carry passengers with the head restraint removed from an occupied seat. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.

⚠ WARNING: Always store a removed head restraint securely.

REAR HEAD RESTRAINTS

⚠ It is possible to swivel the head restraint forwards or backwards. For greater protection in the event of a collision, the head restraint should be adjusted so that it is as close to the back of the head as is practical.

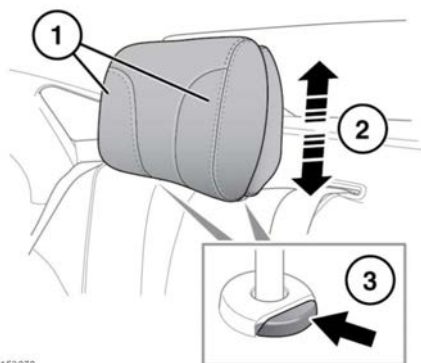
Follow the instructions for the design of head restraint fitted to your vehicle.



1. To raise, pull the restraint upwards, it will click and lock in position.
2. To lower, depress the locking collar and push down on the restraint.
3. To adjust the angle of the head restraint, press the locking collar on the side of the restraint and tilt to the desired position.
4. To adjust the centre head restraint, tilt the restraint forward.
5. Raise or lower the centre head restraint as required. The restraint can be locked in 1 of 3 height positions.

Note: Do not use the locking collars to raise or lower the centre head restraint.

Head restraints



E153070

1. Pull the wing heads forward into the first or second position.
2. To raise, pull the restraint upwards, it will click and lock in only one position.

Note: Do not try to raise the head restraint further than the one adjustment position.

3. To lower, depress both the locking collars at the same time.

REAR HEAD RESTRAINT REMOVAL



Do not drive or carry passengers with the head restraint removed from an occupied seat. The absence of a correctly adjusted head restraint increases the risk of neck injury in the event of a collision.



If the centre rear head restraint is removed to allow the fitting of a child seat. Always store the removed head restraint securely.

It is possible to remove the centre rear head restraint, if necessary, to enable the fitment of a child restraint:

1. Raise the head restraint to its uppermost position.
2. Press both locking collars.
3. Lift the head restraint out of the seat.

Make sure that the head restraint is refitted once the child seat is removed.

Note: It is not possible to remove either the left or right rear head restraints.

To refit the head restraint, make sure it is facing in the correct direction, insert the stems of the head restraint into the sockets and push it downwards until at least the first click.

Steering wheel

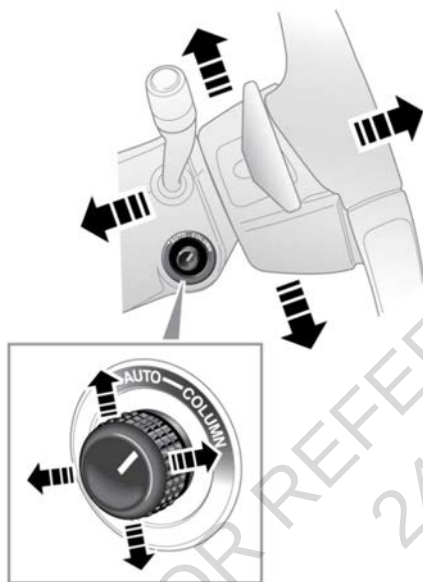
ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL



Never adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving.



Do not use steering wheel mounted security devices. Movement of the steering wheel in Exit and Entry mode, could result in damage to the vehicle or possible injury to the occupant.



E154784

The steering wheel can be adjusted for tilt and reach as follows:

- Move the control forwards or rearwards to adjust reach.
- Move the switch up or down to adjust tilt.

Up to 3 steering wheel positions can be stored and recalled, along with seat and exterior mirror positions, by the Driving position memory. See **14, DRIVING POSITION MEMORY**.

ENTRY AND EXIT MODE

With the steering column adjustment control in the AUTO position, the steering column will move to provide easier entry and exit from the vehicle, as follows:

- **Exit:** When the driver's door is opened, the steering column will move to the uppermost tilt position.
- **Entry:** When the driver's door is closed and the ignition is switched on, the steering column will return to its previously selected driving position.

Note: If the column control is moved away from AUTO when the column is in the Exit position, the column will still move back to its previous driving position when the driver's door is closed and the ignition is switched on.

Note: If the column is manually adjusted during Entry or Exit operation, column movement will stop.

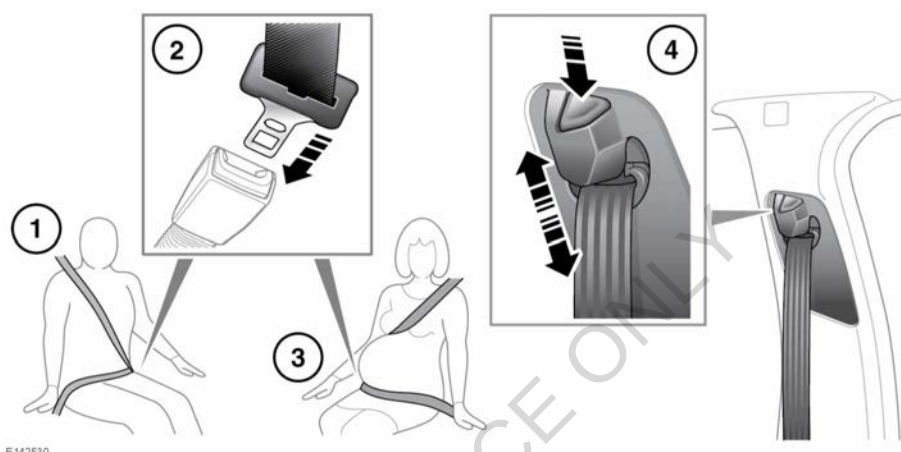
HEATED STEERING WHEEL



To activate the heated steering wheel, press the switch, see **280, DRIVER CONTROLS**. Press again to switch off.

Seat belts

USING THE SEAT BELTS



E142530

- 1. Putting on a seat belt:** Draw the belt out smoothly, making sure that the belt height, the seat and your position on the seat are correct.

When correctly positioned, the seat belt should cross the collar bone at the mid-point between the neck and the end of your shoulder.

Where possible, rear seat passengers should adjust their seating position to achieve the same seat belt position.

- 2. Fastening a seat belt:** With the seat belt correctly positioned, place the metal tongue into the buckle nearest to you. Press it in until a click is heard. To release the seat belt, press the red button.

Note: When releasing the seat belt, it is advisable to hold the belt before pressing the release button. This will prevent the belt from retracting too quickly.

- 3. Seat belt use during pregnancy:** Position the lap strap comfortably across the hips, beneath the abdomen. Place the diagonal part of the seat belt between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen.



Position the seat belt correctly for the safety of the mother and unborn child. Never wear just the lap strap, and never sit on the lap strap while using just the shoulder strap. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous, and may increase your risk of serious injury in the event of an accident or during emergency braking.



Never place anything between you and the seat belt in an attempt to cushion the impact in the event of an accident. It can be dangerous, and will reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt in preventing injury.

- 4. Seat belt height adjustment:** Press to release the catch.



Seat belts

With the catch pressed, move the mechanism up or down to the required height. Make sure the locking mechanism has engaged.

When correctly positioned, the seat belt should cross the collar bone at the mid-point between the neck and the end of your shoulder.

Where possible, rear seat passengers should adjust their seating position to achieve the same seat belt position.

 **Make sure the seat belt height is correctly adjusted and the mechanism is locked in place before driving.** Maladjustment of the seat belt could reduce its effectiveness in a crash. Do not attempt to adjust the seat belt height once the vehicle is in motion. Doing so may cause you to lose control of the vehicle, or incorrectly adjust the seat belt.

 **Do not use comfort clips or other devices that would create slack in the seat belt system.**

 **No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack. A slack seat belt offers a greatly reduced level of occupant protection in an impact.**

 **Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.**

 **Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.**

Make sure that any belt positioning sliders are adjusted so as not to introduce slack.

 **Belts should not be worn with straps twisted. Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.**

 **Riding with a reclined seatback increases your chance of serious or fatal injuries in the event of a collision or sudden stop. The protection of your restraint system (seat belts and airbags) is greatly reduced by reclining your seat. Seat belts must be snug against your hips and chest to work properly. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the chance that an occupant's hips will slide under the lap belt or the occupant's neck will strike the shoulder belt. Drivers and passengers should always sit well back in their seats, properly belted and with the seatbacks upright.**

 **The airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) is designed to add to the overall effectiveness of the seat belts. It does not replace them. Seat belts must always be worn.**

 **Seat belts should be worn by all vehicle occupants, for every trip, no matter how short. Failure to do so will greatly increase the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.**

Seat belts

-  **Never wear just the lap belt or just the shoulder belt of a lap/shoulder diagonal seat belt. Both of these actions are extremely dangerous and may increase your risk of injury.**

SEAT BELT PRE-TENSIONERS

The seat belt pre-tensioners activate in conjunction with the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) to provide additional protection in the event of a severe frontal impact. They automatically reduce any slack in a seat belt to reduce forward movement of a front seat occupant.

-  **The seat belt pre-tensioners will activate only once and then must be replaced. Failure to replace them will reduce the effectiveness of the SRS in reducing the risk of serious injury or death in the event of an accident.**
-  **After any impact, have the seat belts and pre-tensioners checked and, if necessary, replaced by a Retailer/Authorised Repairer.**

SEAT BELT SAFETY

Each seat in the vehicle will have a dedicated seat belt. Each seat belt is designed for an individual seat occupant, aged older than 12 years, or with a body mass greater than 36 kg. Occupants with a lower age, or a lower body mass, should use an appropriate child restraint. See **29, CHILD SEAT POSITIONING**.

The front seat belts are equipped with a load limiter. This will help to regulate the over-tension of a seat belt in a severe impact, to help reduce the possibility of injury to the occupant.

-  **A seat belt should be replaced if the webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.**

-  **It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact, even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.**

-  **If any damage, wear, cuts, defects, or impaired operation are noted with the seat belts, the vehicle should be taken to a Retailer/Authorised Repairer for immediate attention. Do not use the vehicle if the seat belts cannot be operated correctly.**

-  **Seat belts should be inspected or replaced by qualified personnel only. All replacement parts should be, at least, the same specification as the vehicle's original equipment. If in doubt, consult a Retailer/Authorised Repairer.**

-  **Do not attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with, any part of the vehicle's seat belts; doing so may render the seat belts as ineffective.**

-  **Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. Contaminated seat belts may not operate correctly in an impact and cannot be relied upon.**

-  **When using seat belts to restrain items other than occupants, make sure the belts are not damaged, or exposed to sharp edges.**

-  **Do not carry hard, fragile, or sharp items between your person and the seat belt. In an impact, the pressure on such items can cause them to break, which in turn may cause death or serious injury.**

Seat belts

SEAT BELT CHECKS

Note: If the vehicle is parked on an incline, the seat belt mechanism may lock. This is a safety feature and the belt should be gently eased out from the upper anchorage.

The seat belts should be inspected regularly to check for fraying, cuts, wear to the webbing, and the condition and security of the mechanism, buckles, adjusters, and mounting points.

- With the seat belt fastened, give the webbing near the buckle a quick upward pull. The buckle must remain securely locked.
- With the seat belt unfastened, unreel the seat belt to the limit of its travel. Check that it unreels smoothly with no snatches or snags. Allow the belt to fully retract, again checking for smooth operation.
- Partially unreel the seat belt, then hold the tongue plate and give a quick forward pull. The mechanism must lock and prevent any further unreeling.



If any of the seat belts fail to meet those criteria, immediately contact your Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

SEAT BELT REMINDER

Seat belt reminder commences when the vehicle is in motion and the driver's seat belt is unbuckled. Dependent on the market, an audible chime sounds and the warning indicator in the Instrument panel illuminates. See **45, SEAT BELT (RED)**. The visual and audible warnings applicable to the Seat belt reminder feature are market dependent, to meet individual market requirements. The warning signals given may also change, depending on whether the vehicle is stationary or when the vehicle's speed exceeds a predetermined threshold. In certain markets, the Seat belt reminder feature also applies to the front passenger seat.

A graphic displayed in the Message centre indicates which seat belts are fastened at the start of a journey, and also when a seat belt is fastened or unfastened during a journey.



E173977

Each seating position is represented by a passenger icon, the colour of which indicates the seat belt status:

- Green - seat belt, in the indicated position, is fastened.

Seat belts

- Red - seat belt, in the indicated position, has been unfastened while the vehicle's ignition is on. This indicator will turn grey after 30 seconds.
- Grey - seat belt not fastened.

Note: The indicators will be displayed for 30 seconds each time there is a status change, e.g., a seat belt is unfastened or fastened, or a door is opened and then closed.

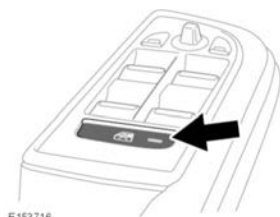
In addition, an audible warning will sound under the following conditions:

- The seat belt of an occupied front seat is not fastened or is unfastened during a journey.
- A rear seat belt is unfastened.

Note: If a heavy object is placed on the front passenger seat, it may activate the Seat belt minder feature. It is recommended that any objects placed on the front passenger seat are secured using the seat belt.

Child safety

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



If children are to be carried in the rear seat positions, it is recommended that the rear door interior handles are disabled.

Press the switch to activate the child door locks and to also inhibit the rear windows. The LED indicator will illuminate when active and a message will be displayed in the Message centre.

To switch off, press the switch again. The LED lamp will extinguish and a message will display in the Message centre.

CHILD SEATS



For optimum safety, children should travel in the rear of the vehicle at all times; front passenger seat travel is not recommended. However, if it is essential that a child travels in the front (not permitted in Australia), set the vehicle's seat fully rearward and seat the child in an approved forward-facing child seat. Do not use a rearward-facing child seat - an inflating airbag could impact with the seat and cause serious injury.



Do not use a forward-facing child seat until the child using it is above the minimum weight of 9 kg and able to sit up unaided. Up to the age of two, a child's spine and neck are not sufficiently developed to avoid injury in a frontal impact.



Do not allow a baby or infant to be held or carried on the lap. The force of a crash can increase effective body weight by as much as thirty times, making it impossible to hold onto the child. At all times, children should be restrained in age and size appropriate child seats to reduce the risk of death or serious injury in a crash.



Children could be endangered in a crash if their child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle. Always follow the instructions that accompany the child seat carefully.



Children typically require the use of a booster seat appropriate to their age and size, thereby enabling the seat belts to be properly fitted, reducing the risk of injury in a crash. Children could be endangered in a crash if their child restraints are not properly secured in the vehicle.



Do not use a child seat that hooks over the seatback. This type of seat cannot be satisfactorily secured and is unlikely to be safe for your child.

The seat belts fitted to your vehicle are designed for adults and larger children. For their safety, it is very important for all infants and children under 12 years of age to be restrained in a suitable child safety seat, appropriate to their age and size.

Child safety

If it is essential that a child travels in the front passenger seat (and national or state legislation permits this), Jaguar Land Rover Limited recommends that the following preparations are made before fitting the child restraint:

- Adjust the front passenger seat fully rearwards.
- Adjust the lumbar support to its minimum support position.
- Adjust the seat cushion to its highest position. If cushion front tilt adjustment is possible, adjust it to its lowest position.
- Adjust the seatback to an upright position to support the child restraint.
- Adjust the seat belt upper anchorage to its lowest position.

 **Extreme hazard! Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!**

 **NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.**



E132397

This symbol, affixed to the front door B-post on the passenger side, warns against the use of a rearward-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, when a front passenger airbag is fitted and operational.



E145193

This symbol, affixed to the passenger side sun-visor, warns against the use of a rearward-facing child seat in the front passenger seat, when a front passenger airbag is fitted and operational.

CHILD SEAT POSITIONING

 Crash statistics show that children are safest when properly restrained in a child or infant restraint system that is secured in a rear seating position.

 Seat belts (or suitable child restraints) should be used by all vehicle occupants, for every trip, no matter how short. Failure to do so will greatly increase the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.

Information given within the table is correct at the time of going to press. However, availability of child restraints may change. Please consult your Retailer/Authorised Repairer for the latest recommendation.

Note: The information contained in the following table may not be applicable to all countries. If you are in any doubt regarding the type and fitment of child seats, seek advice from your Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

Note: Ages given are approximate. In case of doubt, the child's weight, not age, should be used when considering an appropriate child seat.

Child safety

Note: The legislation which governs how and where children should be carried when travelling in a vehicle, is subject to change. It is the responsibility of the driver to comply with all regulations in force.

Mass group	Seating positions			
	Front passenger*	Rear outboard**	Rear centre	Rear centre***
0 = Up to 10 kg 0 to 9 months	X	U	U	X
0+ = Up to 13 kg 0 to 18 months	X	U	U	X
I = 9 to 18 kg 9 months to 4 years	UF	U	U	X
II = 15 to 25 kg 4 to 9 years	UF	U	U	X
III = 22 to 36 kg 8 to 12 years	UF	U	U	X

U = Suitable for universal category restraints approved for this mass group.

UF = Suitable for forward-facing Universal category restraints approved for this mass group.

X = Not suitable for child restraint fitment in this mass group.

* The front passenger seat should be positioned fully rearward, the seat cushion to its highest position and the seatback adjusted to an upright position to support the child restraint. If the head restraint has been removed, make sure that it is refitted before the seat is used by a passenger.

** For vehicles fitted with adjustable second row seats, adjust the seatback to the upright position to support the child restraint.

*** For vehicles fitted with Executive class rear seats, the centre position is unsuitable for both forward and rearward-facing child seats.

When installing a child seat in the rear, the front seat must be moved forward and upwards to install any rearward-facing child seat. Care must be taken not to load any part of the child seat when repositioning the front seat. The space available for front seat occupants will be reduced by the installation of any rearward-facing child seat.

Child safety

ISOFIX Child seat positioning

Mass group as shown on the child restraint	Size classes	Fixtures	Second row outboard seats	Recommended child restraint system
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	X	-
	G	ISO/L2	X	-
0 Up to 10 kg 0 to 9 months	E	ISO/R1	IL	Britax/Römer Baby Safe Plus with Baby-Safe ISOFIX Base
0+ Up to 13 kg 0 to 18 months	E	ISO/R1	IL	-
	D	ISO/R2	IL	-
	C	ISO/R3	IL	-
I 9 to 18 kg 9 months to 4 years	D	ISO/R2	IL	-
	C	ISO/R3	IL	-
	B	ISO/F2	IUF	Britax/Römer Baby Duo Plus
	B1	ISO/F2X	IUF	
	A	ISO/F3	IUF	
II/III 15 to 36 kg 4 to 12 years	-	-	-	-

IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraint systems of universal category, approved for use in this mass group.

IL = These ISOFIX child restraint systems are of the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories.

X = Not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint fitment in this mass group.

Note: The information contained in the above table may not be applicable to all countries. If you are in any doubt regarding the type and fitment of child seats, seek advice from your Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

Note: Ages given are approximate. In case of doubt, the child's weight, not age, should be used when considering an appropriate child seat.

Note: ISOFIX anchorages are provided for second row outer seating positions. ISOFIX child restraints should be securely attached, following the manufacturer's instructions at these locations only.

RECOMMENDED CHILD SEATS

Child size/age	Recommended seat
Groups 0 and 0+	Britax/Römer Baby Safe Plus
Group I	Britax/Römer Duo Plus
Group II and III	Britax/Römer Kid Plus



Child safety

CHILD RESTRAINT CHECK LIST

Every time a child travels in the vehicle, observe the following:

- Use appropriate child restraints.
- Carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the restraint system.
- Adjust the harnesses for every child on every journey.
- Make sure that all slack is removed from the adult seat belt.
- Always attach the top tether when installing an ISOFIX seat (If applicable to seat type).
- Always check the security of the child restraint.
- Do not dress a child in bulky clothing, or place any objects/padding between the child and the restraint.
- Regularly check the fit and condition of child restraints. If the fit is poor, or wear/damage is visible, replace the restraint immediately.
- Set a good example - always wear your seat belt.
- For child seats fitted with a support leg, adjust the leg so that it rests firmly on the floor.
- For some child seats, it may be necessary to remove the head restraint to make sure of a stable fit. Always make sure the head restraint is stowed correctly, and refit the head restraint after the child seat is removed.



Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

BOOSTER SEATS

In a situation where a child is too large to fit into a child safety seat, but is still too small to safely fit the 3-point belt, a booster seat is recommended for maximum safety. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for fitting and use, then adjust the seat belt to suit.

INSTALLING ISOFIX CHILD RESTRAINTS



Do not attempt to fit ISOFIX restraints to the centre rear seating position. The anchor bars are not designed to hold an ISOFIX restraint in this position.



If the restraint is not correctly anchored, there is a significant risk of injury to the child in the event of a collision or emergency braking.

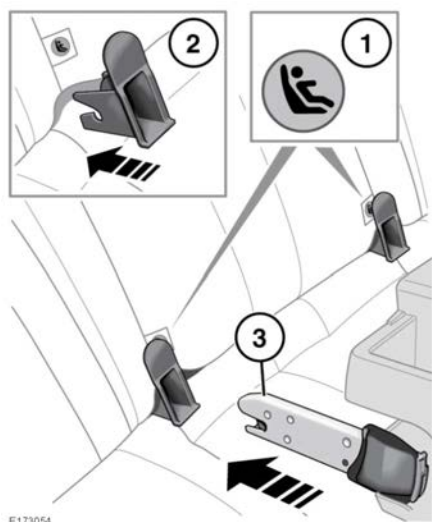


WARNING: child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

ISOFIX anchorages are provided at the outer seat positions on the second row seats.

For vehicles fitted with Executive class rear seats, before fitting an ISOFIX seat, adjust the seatback to the fully upright position.

Child safety



To install an ISOFIX child seat:

1. This symbol is shown on a label sewn into the seats to indicate the position of the LATCH lower anchorages.
2. Locate the lower anchor bars which are accessible through the gap between the seatback and seat base. Insert the protective guides supplied with the child seat, as shown. The insertion positions for the guides are identified by the ISOFIX labels.
3. Slide the child seat locking mechanism into the protective sleeves and onto the anchor bars.

If an upper tether is fitted to the child seat, see **33, INSTALLING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS**.

Test the security of the child restraint. To do this, attempt to pull the restraint away from the vehicle's seat and twist the restraint from side to side. Even if the restraint appears secure, you should still check the anchor points visually, to make sure they are correctly attached.

Note: Always make sure that if an upper tether is provided, it is fitted and tightened correctly.

Note: For child restraints fitted with a support leg, adjust the leg so that it rests firmly on the floor.

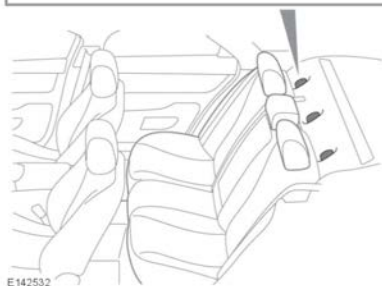
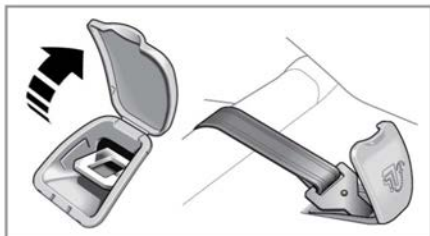
INSTALLING TETHER ANCHORAGE CHILD RESTRAINTS

- ⚠ Always follow the child seat or restraint system manufacturer's instructions when fitting tether straps.
- ⚠ When fitting a child seat or restraint system, always pass the tether strap over the top of the seatback and beneath the head restraint.
- ⚠ If removing a head restraint in order to fit a child restraint, always secure the head restraint when storing it.

The vehicle is equipped with tether anchorage points, located behind the rear seat head restraints. These should be used to attach straps from child seats or child restraint systems.

Always fit the upper tether anchorage and tighten correctly.

Child safety



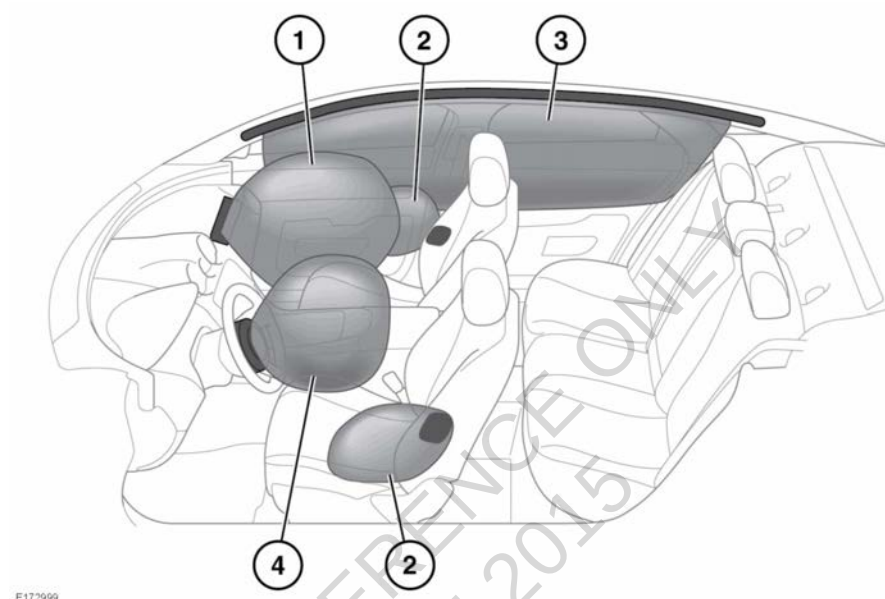
⚠ Make sure that the rear seatback is securely and completely latched to the vehicle, in the normal upright position.

1. Pass the tether strap over the seatback and beneath the head restraint*.
2. Release the access cover for the relevant tether anchorage point.
3. Attach the tether strap hook to the tether anchorage point. Make sure that the tether strap hook is facing towards the back of the seat.
4. Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat, or the child restraint, manufacturer's instructions.

Note: *On vehicles fitted with Executive class rear seats, raise the centre armrest to the upright position and pass the strap over the top.

Airbags

AIRBAGS AND ACTIVE HEAD RESTRAINTS



E172999

1. Front passenger airbag.
2. Seat-mounted side airbags.
3. The curtain airbags may deflate at a slower rate than the front or side airbags, to afford prolonged protection.
4. Driver's airbag.

Note: The general location of airbags fitted to the vehicle are marked by the word AIRBAG.

Always contact your Retailer/Authorised Repairer if:

- An airbag inflates.
- The front or sides of the vehicle are damaged.
- Any part of the airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) shows signs of cracking or damage, including any trim covering the airbags.

- The amber airbag warning lamp illuminates.



High speed impacts may cause serious injury or death, irrespective of safety features fitted to a vehicle. Always drive with caution and consideration for the vehicle's characteristics, road and weather conditions, and do not exceed any speed limits in force.



Seat belts should be worn at all times, by the driver and passengers in all seating positions. The airbag Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) cannot provide protection in some types of impact. Under these circumstances, the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.

Airbags

Active head restraints

Both front seats are equipped with Active Head Restraints (AHR) which reduce the risk of neck and spinal injury (whiplash).

In the event of a rear impact, the head restraint moves upwards and forwards, supporting the occupant's head.

After activation, the whiplash protection mechanism resets automatically and does not need to be replaced.

AIRBAG OPERATION

Airbags provide additional protection in certain types of collision only - they do not replace the need to wear a seat belt. All occupants, in all seating positions, should always wear their seat belt, whether or not an airbag is present in that seating position.

 **For the airbags to operate correctly, the roof lining and door post trims must be in good condition, correctly fitted, and free from obstruction. Any damage, wear, or incorrect fitment should be referred to your Retailer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible, for examination and repair.**

 **Airbags inflate at high speeds and can cause facial abrasions and other injuries. To minimise the risk of injury, make sure that all vehicle occupants wear correctly positioned seat belts, sit correctly in the seats, and position the seats as far back as practical.**

 **Airbag inflation takes place instantaneously, and cannot protect against the effects of secondary impacts. Under these circumstances, the only protection will be provided by a correctly worn seat belt.**

Airbag deployment is dependent on the rate at which the passenger compartment changes velocity following the collision. Circumstances affecting different collisions (vehicle speed, angle of impact, type and size of object hit, etc.), vary considerably and will affect the rate of deceleration accordingly.

The airbags and Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) are not designed to operate as a result of:

- Rear impacts.
- Minor front impacts.
- Minor side impacts.
- Heavy braking.
- Driving over bumps and pot holes.

Therefore, it follows that considerable superficial damage to the vehicle can occur, without causing the airbags to deploy.

AIRBAG OBSTRUCTION

 **Do not obstruct the operation of the airbags by placing any part of your person or any objects in contact with, or close to, an airbag module. If the airbag inflates, objects or any part of your person could interfere with the inflation of the airbag or be propelled inside the vehicle, causing injury to the occupants.**

 **Do not allow passengers to obstruct the operation of the airbags by placing feet, knees, or any other part of the body, or any other objects in contact with, or in close proximity to, an airbag module.**

Do not place objects between the airbag module and the seat occupant.

Airbags

 **Do not use non-approved seat covers or accessory seat covers that have not been designed for use with airbags. If in doubt, consult your Retailer/ Authorised Repairer.**

 **Make sure that a gap is maintained between the side of the vehicle, and the head and torso. This will enable unobstructed inflation of the curtain, and seat-mounted side airbags.**

 **Do not attach or position items on, or close to, the roof lining, front seat backrests, or to an airbag cover, which could interfere with the inflation of the airbag or be propelled inside the vehicle, causing injury to the occupants.**

Airbags cannot deploy correctly if they are obstructed. Examples of obstructions are:

- Any parts of an occupant's body in contact with, or close to, an airbag cover.
- Objects placed on, or close to, an airbag cover.
- Clothing, sun screens or other material hanging from grab handles.
- Clothing, cushions or other material covering seat mounted airbags.
- Seat covers which are not approved by Jaguar or specifically designed for use with seat mounted airbags.

This list is not exhaustive. It remains the responsibility of the occupants to make sure that the airbags are not obstructed in any way.

FRONT AIRBAGS

The front passenger and driver airbags are able to deploy in 2 stages, depending on the severity of the frontal impact. In a severe impact, the airbags inflate fully to offer maximum protection. In a lesser impact, full deployment is not required, so the airbags are partially inflated.

SIDE AIRBAGS

These are designed to protect the thorax region of the torso and will deploy only in the event of a side impact and then, only on the side of the impact.

CURTAIN AIRBAGS

The curtain airbags are deployed in side impacts, providing greater protection from serious head injuries.



For the curtain airbags to deploy correctly, the roof lining and A-post trim must be undamaged and fitted correctly. Any damage or suspect fitting should be referred to a Retailer/ Authorised Repairer for examination.

Note: *Curtain airbags will not inflate as a result of frontal or rear impacts alone.*

Airbags

AIRBAG DEPLOYMENT EFFECTS



When an airbag inflates, a fine powder is released. This is normal and not an indication of a malfunction. The powder may cause irritation to the skin and should be thoroughly flushed from eyes and any cuts or abrasions. This powder can cause breathing difficulties for asthma sufferers or other people with respiratory problems. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so or get fresh air by opening a window. If breathing problems persist, seek medical attention.



Airbag deployment is accompanied by a very loud noise, which may cause discomfort and temporary loss of hearing.



After inflation, some airbag components will be very hot. Do not touch the airbag components until they have cooled sufficiently.



After inflation, the front and seat-mounted side airbags deflate immediately. This provides a gradual cushioning effect for the occupants and also makes sure the driver's forward vision is not obscured.

AIRBAG WARNING LAMP

The airbag warning lamp is mounted in the Instrument panel and will illuminate as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on. See 46, AIRBAG (AMBER).



The warning lamp indicates a potential fault with the vehicle restraint system which could result in serious injury or death in the event of a severe accident.



If the warning lamp indicates that a fault is present in the system, do not use a child restraint on the front passenger seat.

If any of the following warning lamp conditions occur, the vehicle should be checked by your Retailer/Authorised Repairer immediately:

- The warning lamp fails to illuminate when the ignition is switched on.
- The warning lamp fails to extinguish within 6 seconds of the ignition being switched on.
- The warning lamp illuminates at any time, other than during the bulb check, when the ignition is on.

When the ignition is switched on, a diagnostic control unit monitors the readiness of the system's electrical circuits. The elements of the Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) components include:

- SRS warning lamp.
- Rotary coupler.
- Airbag modules.
- Seat belt pre-tensioners (front seat belts).
- Airbag diagnostic control unit.
- Crash sensors.
- Airbag wiring harnesses.
- Airbag status indicator.
- Front seat belt buckle switches.
- Front seat track position sensor.

AIRBAG SERVICE INFORMATION



Phone systems should only be installed by qualified persons familiar with the operation of, and requirements for, vehicles fitted with Supplementary Restraint System (SRS). If you are in any doubt, seek advice from your Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

Airbags

 Do not attempt to service, repair, replace, modify, or tamper with, any part of the SRS. This includes wiring or components in the vicinity of SRS components. Doing so may cause the system to trigger, or render the system inoperative.

 Do not use any electrical test equipment or devices in the vicinity of SRS components or wiring. Doing so may cause the system to trigger, or render the system inoperative.

 For your safety, all of the following operations should only be carried out by a Retailer/Authorised Repairer, or suitably qualified person:

- Removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any SRS components.
- Installation of electrical, or electronic, equipment and accessories.
- Modification to the front or sides of the vehicle's exterior.
- Attachment of accessories to the front or sides of the vehicle.

Always contact your Retailer/Authorised Repairer if:

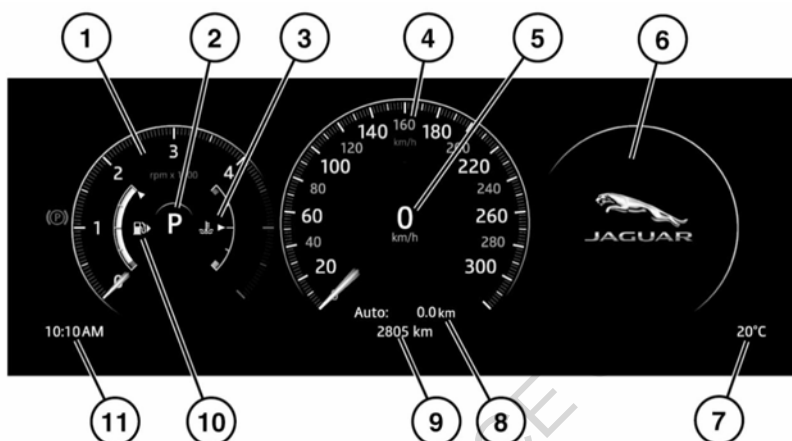
- An airbag inflates.
- The front or sides of the vehicle are damaged.
- Any part of the airbag SRS shows signs of cracking or damage, including the trim covering the airbags.

DISABILITY MODIFICATIONS

Occupants with disabilities which may require the vehicle to be modified, must contact a Retailer/Authorised Repairer before any modifications are made.

Instrument panel

INSTRUMENT PANEL



E172915

1. Tachometer.
2. Gear selector position display.
3. Temperature gauge.

⚠ Serious engine damage can occur if the vehicle is driven while the engine is overheating.

If the pointer moves onto the red line, the engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and allow the engine to idle until the temperature reduces. If, after several minutes, the temperature does not reduce, switch off the engine and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, seek qualified assistance immediately.

Note: If engine overheating occurs, there may be a noticeable reduction in engine power and the air conditioning may cease operation. This is a normal operating strategy, to reduce load on the engine and assist with engine cooling.

4. Speedometer.
5. Current speed.
6. Message centre.

7. External temperature.
8. Trip information.
9. Total distance (odometer).
10. Fuel gauge.

⚠ Never allow the engine to run out of fuel. The resultant misfire can seriously damage the catalytic converter.

If the amber low fuel warning lamp illuminates, the vehicle should be refuelled as soon as possible. The approximate distance that can be travelled on the remaining fuel can be viewed via the Trip computer range function.

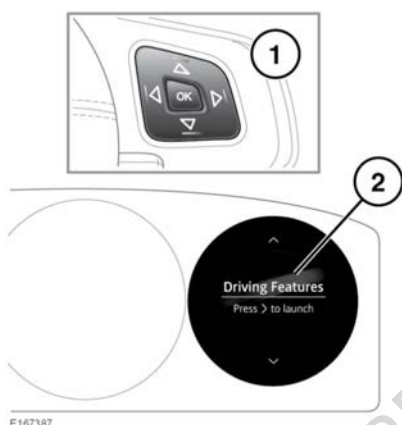
As a reminder for the location of the fuel filler, there is an arrow head symbol, next to the fuel pump symbol, pointing to the relevant side of the vehicle.

11. Clock.

Instrument panel

INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU

A number of vehicle features and display settings may be configured via the Instrument panel menu.



E167397

To display and navigate through the Instrument panel menu, operate the menu control on the steering wheel.

1. Steering wheel menu control: Press **OK** to activate the menu, then use as follows:
 - Press the up/down arrow to scroll up or down through a list.
 - Press the right arrow to view a sub-list.
 - Press the left arrow to return to the previous menu.
 - Press the **OK** button to select the highlighted item from a list.
2. Scroll through the Main menu options as follows:
 - **Driving Features**
 - **Trip Computer**
 - **Settings**
 - **Tyre Pressures**

- **Service:** Displays with the ignition on and the engine running.
- **Source**
- **Queue/Favourites:** Dependant on the source selected.
- **Recents:** Displays with the phone connected.
- **Display Theme**

Info panel: Select to change the information displayed within the Instrument panel.

Map: Select to set the Instrument panel to display the full screen navigation map, with guidance and junction view.

Theme: Select to change the appearance of the Instrument panel.

WARNING AND INFORMATION MESSAGES



Do not ignore warning messages, take appropriate action as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in serious damage to the vehicle.
If the message is suppressed, an amber or red warning icon will remain illuminated until the cause of the message is rectified.

For information regarding the individual messages, their meanings, and any action required, please refer to the relevant section within this handbook.

If more than one message is active, each is displayed in turn for 2 seconds in order of priority.

Note: Messages are displayed in order of importance, with critical warning messages being the highest priority.

Instrument panel

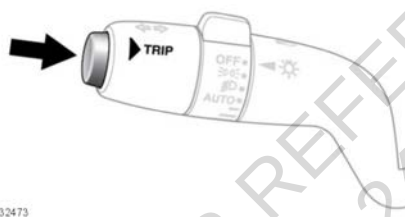
Warning messages may be accompanied by an audible warning, and the message text may have the handbook symbol next to it. Warning messages are displayed until the condition causing the fault is rectified or the message is suppressed using the **OK** button on the steering wheel. If the message is suppressed, a warning icon will remain illuminated until the cause of the message is rectified.

TRIP COMPUTER

The computer memory stores data for a journey or series of journeys until it is reset to zero.

There are 3 trip memories available, A, B and Auto. You can specify which trip memory is viewable using the Instrument panel menu.

USING THE TRIP COMPUTER



A short press (1 second or less), or a series of short presses, of the **TRIP** button will change the Trip computer display. The options available are:

- Trip distance.
- Trip average speed.
- Trip average fuel consumption.
- Instantaneous (short term average) fuel consumption.
- Range available from remaining fuel.
- Driving style.
- Blank display.

To reset the Trip computer values to zero, press and hold the **TRIP** button for 2 seconds.

To reset the fuel consumption value, press and hold the **TRIP** button until the display clears.

The distance, average speed and average fuel economy values for trip **A** and trip **B** can be reset. Set the Trip computer display to show the trip that you wish to reset, then press and hold the **TRIP** button until the message **resetting trip** is displayed.

It is not possible to manually reset the Auto trip memory. This resets automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

Trips may be added together, or removed to record a continuous journey. Press the **TRIP** button for longer than 1 second, when Auto trip memory values for distance, average speed and average fuel economy are displayed, then **adding last journey** or **removing last journey** will appear on the screen. Press the **TRIP** button for longer than 1 second, and the previous trip information will be added to or, removed from, the current trip and the new total will be displayed. There is no limit to the number of times this can be done before the ignition is switched off.

TRIP DISTANCE

Distance travelled since the last memory reset. The maximum trip reading is 9 999.9 (kilometres or miles). The computer will automatically reset to zero if this distance is exceeded.

RANGE

This shows the predicted distance (kilometres or miles) that the vehicle should travel on the remaining fuel, assuming fuel consumption stays constant.

Instrument panel

METRIC/IMPERIAL/MIXED DISPLAY

The Trip computer readings can be changed between metric, imperial and mixed units in the **Trip Computer** menu of the Message centre. See **41, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

***Note:** Temperature display can be changed between °C (Celsius) and °F (Fahrenheit) independently of Metric or Imperial units.*

SERVICE INTERVAL INDICATOR

An upcoming service interval will be notified to the driver via the Message centre, as either a distance or time left until the service is due. Once the distance or time are exceeded, the display will show a negative (-) value to indicate that a service is overdue.

One or both types of service interval (distance and time) may be displayed.

Details of the next service can be found in the **Service** Instrument panel menu. See **41, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Warning lamps

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

RED warning lamps are for primary warnings. A primary warning must be investigated immediately by the driver or qualified assistance before continuing.

AMBER and YELLOW warning lamps are for secondary warnings. Some indicate that a vehicle system is in operation, others indicate that the driver must take action and then seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

GREEN and BLUE lamps within the instrument panel indicate system status.

LAMP CHECK

A warning lamp bulb check is initiated when the ignition system is switched on and lasts for 3 seconds (except for the airbag warning lamp which will remain on for 6 seconds). If any warning lamp remains on after this period, investigate the cause before driving.

Some warning lamps have associated messages displayed in the Message centre.

Note: *Not all warning lamps are included in the check (e.g. high beam headlamps and direction indicators).*

CRITICAL WARNING MESSAGE (RED)



Illuminates when a critical warning message is available in the Message centre.

GENERAL WARNING/INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)



Illuminates when a non-critical warning message or an information message is available in the Message centre.

ENGINE TEMPERATURE (RED)



Illuminates when the engine temperature is too high. The Message centre will also display the message **ENGINE OVERHEATING**.

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and seek qualified assistance before continuing.

LOW OIL PRESSURE (RED)



If the lamp flashes or illuminates while driving, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and switch off the engine immediately.

Check and top up the oil level, if necessary. Start the engine, if the lamp remains illuminated, switch the engine off immediately and seek qualified assistance before continuing.

BRAKE (RED)



Do not drive if the message Brake Fluid Low is displayed. Check the brake fluid level and top-up as necessary. If necessary, seek qualified assistance before continuing.



Illuminates briefly as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on. If the lamp illuminates while driving, suspect low brake fluid level or a fault with the Electronic Brake Distribution (EBD) system.

Stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and check and top-up the brake fluid, if necessary. If the lamp remains illuminated, seek qualified assistance before continuing.

Warning lamps

PARKING BRAKE (RED)



Illuminates when the parking brake is correctly applied. If the lamp flashes, a fault has been detected. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

BATTERY CHARGE (RED)



Illuminates as a bulb check, when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes when the engine is started.

If the lamp remains on or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the battery charging system and a message will be displayed in the Message centre. Seek qualified assistance urgently.

SEAT BELT (RED)



Illuminates, accompanied by a chime, when the vehicle is in motion and an occupied front seat belt is unbuckled. The lamp will extinguish when the relevant seat belt(s) is buckled.

Note: Objects on the front passenger seat may activate the seat belt reminder. It is recommended that any objects placed on the front passenger seat are secured using the seat belt. See **23, USING THE SEAT BELTS**.

BRAKE (AMBER)



Illuminates briefly as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp illuminates after starting the engine or while driving, suspect worn brake pads or a fault with the Emergency Brake Assist (EBA) system.

The vehicle can still be driven with care, but seek qualified assistance urgently.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM (ABS) (AMBER)



If the ABS and brake warning lamps are illuminated at the same time, do not drive the vehicle until the fault is rectified. Seek qualified assistance immediately.



Illuminates briefly as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp remains on or illuminates while driving, there is a fault with the ABS system. Drive with care, avoiding heavy brake application and seek qualified assistance urgently.

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM (AMBER)



Illuminates when there is a system fault. The headlamps will still operate, but without this feature operating correctly. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

ENGINE/TRANSMISSION (AMBER)



Illuminates briefly as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on. If the lamp illuminates when the engine is running, there is an emissions related fault with the engine or transmission. The vehicle can be driven but may enter limp-home mode with the possibility of reduced performance. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

If the warning lamp flashes while the engine is running, reduce speed and seek qualified assistance urgently.

Warning lamps

GLOW PLUGS (AMBER)



Illuminates when the ignition is switched on, to indicate that the glow plugs are active.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)



Illuminates briefly as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on.

If the lamp flashes while driving, the DSC system is active.

A fault with the DSC system is indicated by the warning lamp illuminating and an associated warning message. The vehicle can still be driven, but without DSC assistance. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) OFF (AMBER)



Illuminates when DSC is switched off.

If TracDSC is selected, the warning lamp will also illuminate and the message **TracDSC** is displayed for 4 seconds.

REAR FOG LAMP (AMBER)



Illuminates when the rear fog lamps are switched on.

FOLLOW MODE (AMBER)



Illuminates when the Adaptive cruise control system is in follow mode.

AIRBAG (AMBER)



Illuminates as a bulb check when the ignition is switched on and extinguishes when the engine is started.

If the lamp illuminates when driving, there is a fault with the airbag system. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)



Illuminates when the fuel level is low. Refuel at the earliest opportunity.

The arrow shows which side of the vehicle to locate the fuel filler cap.

AUTOMATIC SPEED LIMITER (AMBER)



Illuminates when Automatic Speed Limiter is active.

EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER)



Illuminates when the external temperature is low enough that ice may be present on the road.

PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM (AMBER)



Illuminates to confirm that the Progress control system is enabled.

INTELLIGENT STOP/START OFF (AMBER)



Illuminates when the Intelligent stop/start system is switched off.

Warning lamps

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (YELLOW)



The warning lamp illuminates, accompanied by a message in the Message centre, to warn that one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible, check the tyre pressures and inflate to the recommended pressure.

The lamp will flash to indicate a system fault.

HIGH BEAM (BLUE)



Illuminates when the high beam headlamps are switched on or flashed.

GEAR SHIFT (GREEN)



The Gear shift indicator illuminates briefly at the recommended gear change point (upshift), while in Manual gear selection mode only.

The Gear shift indicator will not illuminate while Cruise control is active, unless Cruise control is over-riden by pressing the throttle pedal.

Note: This warning indicator is only a guide. It remains the responsibility of the driver to operate the vehicle in an appropriate manner for the prevailing conditions.

SIDE LAMPS (GREEN)



Illuminates when the side lamps are switched on.

AUTO HIGH BEAM (GREEN)



Illuminates when the Auto high beam feature has switched on the high beams.

INTELLIGENT STOP/START (GREEN)



Illuminates when the engine is shut down by the Intelligent Stop/Start system.

Note: Other warnings normally associated with an engine shutdown, for example the ignition warning lamp, do not illuminate during an engine shutdown by the Intelligent Stop/Start system.

FORWARD ALERT (GREEN)



Illuminates when Forward alert is active.

DIRECTION INDICATORS (GREEN)



The appropriate warning lamp will flash when the direction indicators are operated.

If a direction indicator bulb fails, the audible ticking and warning lamp will sound and flash at twice the normal rate, when that direction indicator is selected.

CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)



Illuminates when Cruise control or Adaptive cruise control is active.



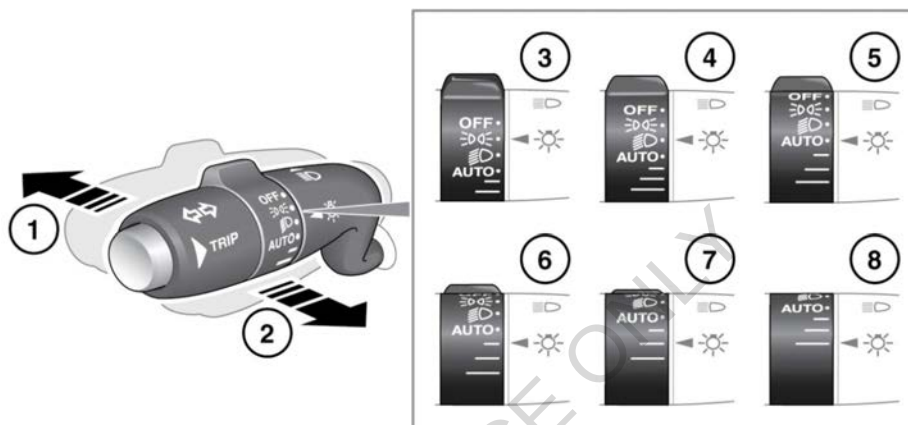
Warning lamps

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Hazard or Condition	Chime or tone/remedy
External lamps remain on when the driver's door is opened.	A chime will sound until the lamps are switched off or the driver's door is closed (unless the lighting control is in the AUTO position).
Hazard warning indicators on.	A ticking will sound until the hazard indicators are switched off.
Direction indicators on.	A ticking will sound until the indicators are switched off.
Memory 1 (2 or 3) settings saved.	A short tone as the memory selection is saved.
Seat belt reminder.	A chime will sound if a seat belt is unbuckled while the vehicle is moving. The warning will cease if the occupied seat's belt is re-buckled, the ignition is switched off or more than 3 minutes has elapsed.
Electric Parking Brake (EPB).	If the EPB is applied while the vehicle is moving, a continuous chime will sound; release the EPB. If there is a fault with the system which would prevent the application of the EPB, a brief sequence of chimes is initiated.
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) driver intervene.	Multiple chime. Apply the brakes.
ACC low speed automatic switch off.	A chime will sound to indicate that the ACC system is no longer operating.
Speed is over 15 km/h (9 mph) above the set limit speed.	A short warning chime. Reduce speed.
Gear selector is not in Park (P) with the ignition off.	A chime will sound. Select Park (P).
Entry delay warning (European markets only).	Intermittent slow, low pitched chime. Disarm the vehicle.
The Smart key cannot be detected.	A chime will sound. Hold the Smart key close to the auxiliary switch pack. See 4, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE .
DSC OFF	A chime will sound.

Exterior lights

LIGHTING CONTROL



E132401

1. With the headlamps on, push the switch away from the steering wheel to select high beam. The blue warning indicator in the Instrument panel will illuminate.
2. Pull the switch towards the steering wheel and release to flash the high beam on and off. The high beam will remain on for as long as the switch is held.
3. Side lamps.
4. Low beam.
5. **AUTO**: When ambient light fades, the side lamps and headlamps will switch on automatically.
6. Exit delay of 30 seconds.
7. Exit delay of 60 seconds.
8. Exit delay of 120 seconds.

Note: If the rotary control is in the **AUTO** position there will be no exit delay and the headlamps will extinguish when the ignition system is switched off.

Press the headlamp button on the Smart key to switch off the headlamps during an exit delay period.

If the rotary control is moved to the **OFF** position, with high beam still activated, both low and high beam will be extinguished. Both low and high beam will illuminate when the headlamps are switched on again.

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

With the rotary control in the **OFF** or **AUTO** position, the front Daylight running lamps will switch on automatically with the following conditions:

- The ignition is on.
- The engine is running.
- The gear selector is in Drive (**D**) or Reverse (**R**) - market dependent.

Exterior lights

Note: The lamps remain on if the gear selector is subsequently moved to Neutral (N).

- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is not applied (is released) - market dependent.

APPROACH LAMPS

The headlamps can be illuminated remotely for a programmed length of time, by pressing the headlamp button on the Smart key. See **4, UNLOCKING THE VEHICLE**. Press the button again to switch off.

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING SYSTEM (AFS)

Adaptive front lighting is designed to give the driver improved visibility, using a swivelling headlamp unit, a static bending lamp and a cornering lamp. These lamps broaden the beam of the headlamps when cornering in different circumstances.

The headlamp unit swivels accordingly when cornering, to improve light spread on bends in the road.

Static bending lamps: The static bending lamps operate when necessary, to provide an even broader light spread.

Cornering lamps: At speeds up to 40 km/h (25 mph), to provide improved visibility at junctions, the system switches on the lamp if it has received an input from the vehicle's direction indicator. Only the lamp on the same side as the operating indicator illuminates. The lamp will self cancel after 3 minutes of continuous operation.

WINDSCREEN WIPER DETECTION

This function only operates when **AUTO** is selected. The side lamps, tail lamps and headlamps will switch on automatically if the windscreen wipers are switched on for 20 seconds or more. Once the windscreen wipers are switched off, the side lamps and headlamps will automatically switch off 2 minutes later.

AUTO HIGH BEAM

This feature automatically selects and deselects high beam, under specific conditions of road lighting and in the absence of other vehicle's lights. The system is only active when the ambient light drops below a predetermined level.

This function is only active if the rotary control is in the **AUTO** position and the lighting control is in the central position.

The system will only activate when the vehicle's speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph). The system will deactivate when the vehicle's speed drops below 24 km/h (15 mph).

Note: Auto high beam does not operate when Reverse (R) gear is selected.

To manually select high beam, move the lighting control to the high beam position, as normal.

To return to Auto high beam, move the lighting control back to the central position.

To manually override to low beam from high beam, pull the lighting control to the flash position and Auto high beam will be cancelled. To return to Auto high beam, push the lighting control to the high beam position and then return it to the central position.

When Auto high beam is enabled, the system indicator will illuminate, see **47, AUTO HIGH BEAM (GREEN)**.

Note: Make sure that the sensor in the rear-view mirror is not blocked or obstructed.

Exterior lights

The following may also affect the operation of Auto high beam:

- Highly reflective road signs.
- Dimly lit road users, for example, cyclists and pedestrians.
- Adverse weather conditions, for example, fog, heavy rain and snow.
- Dirty or obscured sensor.
- Dirty, damaged, or misted windscreen.
- Oncoming vehicles partially obscured by a central road barrier.
- An icy or frosted windscreen.

Note: Make sure to defrost the windscreen during winter conditions.

To switch off Auto high beam, turn the rotary control from **AUTO** to headlamps on.

The Auto high beam feature can be disabled/enabled using the **Driving Features** menu, **41**, **INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

HEADLAMPS - DRIVING ABROAD

No mechanical adjustment is required or the need for any external obscuration decals.

These headlamps are fully compliant with current homologation requirements in all ECE countries.

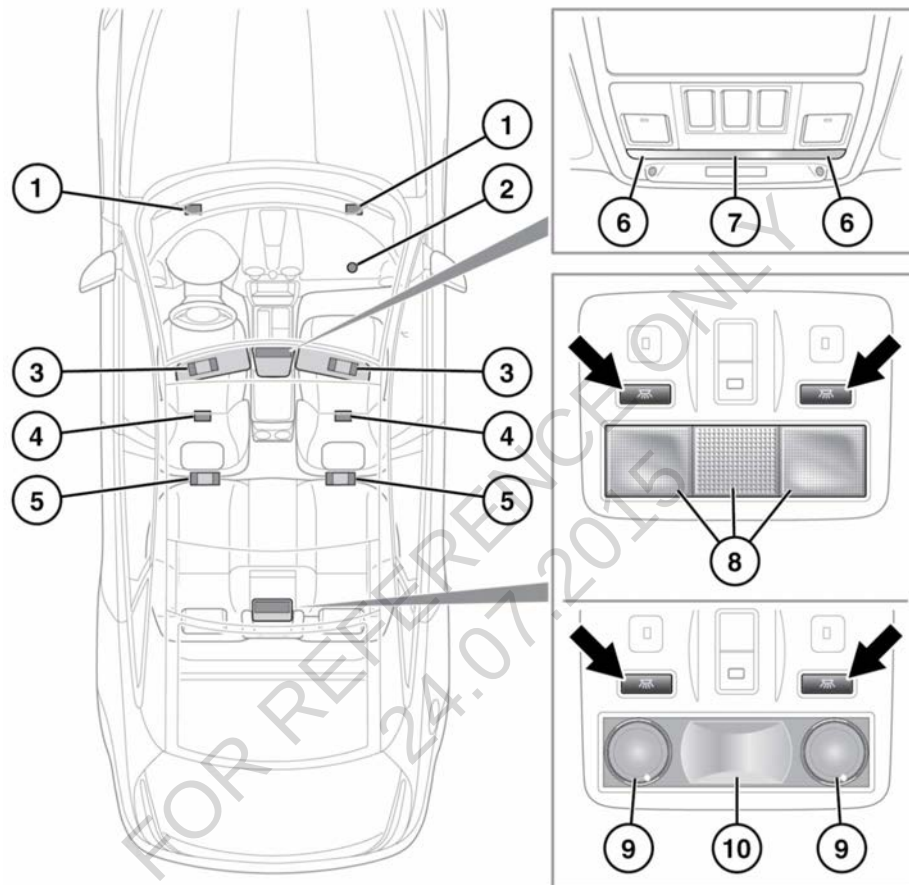
HEADLAMPS - CONDENSATION

In certain circumstances, misting may occur on the inside of a lamp lens. This is caused by natural changes in environmental conditions.

This misting is not detrimental to lamp performance and will clear during normal usage.

Interior lights

INTERIOR LIGHTS



E170772

1. Front seat foot-well illumination.
2. Glove box lamp.
3. Vanity mirror lamps.
4. Rear seat foot-well illumination.
5. Rear vanity mirror lamps (long wheelbase vehicles only).
6. Front reading lamps: Touch the lens briefly to switch on/off or for approximately 2 seconds to switch automatic illumination of the rear interior lamps on/off.
7. Front interior courtesy lamp: Illuminates when the doors are unlocked and extinguishes 20 seconds after all of the doors are closed or when the vehicle is locked.

Interior lights

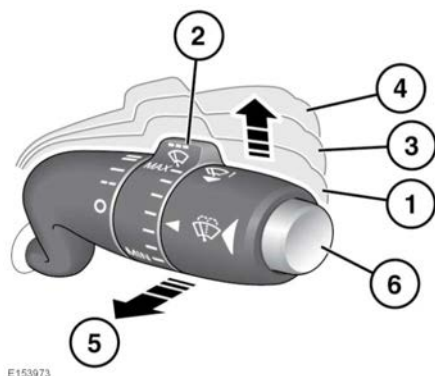
The lamps are operated by proximity sensors. Move your finger close to (or touch) the appropriate lens to switch on/off. Touch the lens for 2 seconds to switch automatic illumination on/off (**INTERIOR LIGHTS OFF** or **INTERIOR LIGHTS AUTO** is displayed in the Message centre accordingly).

8. Rear interior and reading lamps: All 3 lamps switch on automatically when the rear doors are opened.
Press the appropriate switch to activate the outer reading lamps manually.
9. Rear reading lamps: Press the appropriate switch to activate a reading lamp manually.
10. Rear interior courtesy lamp: Switches on automatically when the rear doors are opened.

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

Wipers and washers

WIPER OPERATION



1. Automatic rain sensing mode (AUTO): The front wipers will respond and adapt automatically to the ambient rain conditions, selecting the appropriate wiper frequency for the prevailing conditions. The sensitivity of the system can be adjusted by rotating the collar (2).
2. Rotate the collar to adjust the sensitivity of the automatic rain sensing mode when position (1) is selected. The higher the sensitivity position the more responsive the system will become. When automatic rain sensing mode is selected, or when sensitivity is increased, the system will perform a single wipe.
3. Low speed continuous wipe.
4. High speed continuous wipe.

- ⚠ Do not operate the windscreen wipers on a dry screen.
- ⚠ In freezing or very hot conditions, make sure that the wipers have not stuck to the windscreen before operating.
- ⚠ Remove any snow, ice or frost from the windscreen, around the wiper arms and blades, and the screen scuttle, before operating the wipers.

5. Pull the wiper/washer control towards the driver for a single wipe, or hold for further continuous wipes.
6. Windscreen wash/wipe: Press and release to start a wash/wipe programme consisting of a number of low speed wipes. Washer fluid is sprayed during the up-stroke of the first 2 wipes. Continue to hold if additional washer fluid is required. A few seconds after the programme finishes a drip wipe will clear any residual fluid from the windscreen.

Note: Check and top-up the washer fluid level at least every week, **210, CHECKING THE WASHER FLUID LEVEL.**



Drip wipe on the windscreen can be enabled/disabled by a Retailer/Authorised Repairer.



Washer fluid dispensing during both the up and down strokes of the wipers can be enabled/disabled by a Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

Note: If the wipers leave smears on the glass after the car has been washed, this may be due to wax or other residue. Should this occur, clean the glass with washer fluid.

Note: The windscreen will no longer be wiped effectively and the automatic rain sensing function will degrade if the wipers become worn. Always replace worn or damaged wiper blades as soon as possible.

Note: If the wiper blades become stuck or jammed, an electronic cut-out may temporarily halt wiper operation. If this happens, switch off the wipers and the ignition. Clear any obstructions and free the wiper blades, before attempting to switch on the ignition.



To prevent damage to the bonnet, make sure that the wiper arms are in the 'service' position before lifting the wiper blades away from the windscreen.

Wipers and washers

Note: To set the wipers in the service position for maintenance, see **197, WIPERS SERVICE POSITION**.

SPEED-DEPENDENT MODE

If the vehicle decelerates to a stop with the wipers operating*, the wipers will switch to the next lowest speed. When vehicle speed increases to over 8 km/h (5 mph), the original wiper speed settings are restored.

*Not applicable if Automatic rain sensing mode is selected.



This feature can be enabled/disabled by a Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

RAIN SENSOR



Make sure that the wipers are switched off before entering a car wash. If the rain sensitive wipers operate during the car washing process damage may occur to the wiper mechanism.

The rain sensor is mounted on the inside of the windscreen, behind the rear view mirror. The sensor is able to detect the presence and amount of water on the windscreen and automatically activate the windscreen wipers accordingly.

Note: Static droplets may not be detected on initial start-up. A single wipe should be used to clear the windscreen.

To activate the rain sensitive wipers, move the wiper/washer control to the AUTO position. The behaviour of the system may be tailored to driver preference by rotating the collar.

Note: In dry and often sunny conditions, optical influences and dirt accumulation on the windscreen may result in the windscreen wipers activating inadvertently. To prevent this, it is recommended that under these conditions the wiper controls are returned to the OFF position.

The Rain sensor feature can be enabled/disabled in the Instrument panel menu. See **41, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

HEADLAMP WASHERS

If the headlamps are on, and there is sufficient liquid in the washer reservoir, operating the screen wash will also power wash the headlamps.

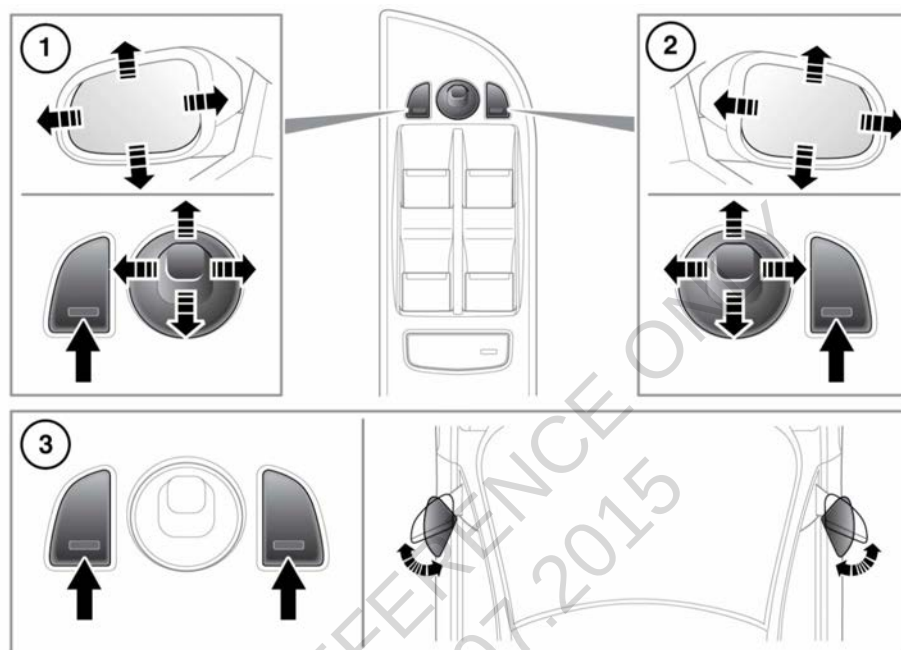
The headlamp power wash will operate on every forth operation of the screen washer, provided the headlamps are still switched on and approximately 10 minutes have elapsed since the last headlamp wash.

Switching the headlamps or ignition off and back on again, will reset the cycle.

Note: The headlamp power wash is inhibited when the washer fluid reservoir level is low.

Mirrors

EXTERIOR MIRRORS



E132474

1. Left mirror adjustment.
2. Right mirror adjustment.
3. Powerfold/unfold: Press both buttons simultaneously. This feature is inhibited at speeds over 110 km/h (70 mph).

The mirrors can be adjusted and folded when the ignition is on and for up to 5 minutes after the ignition is switched off, provided the driver's door is not opened.

Press the appropriate button to select the mirror to be adjusted (button indicator illuminates), then use the joystick control to adjust the mirror glass.

Note: Depending on the type of lens used, distances may be difficult to judge accurately when only using the mirrors.



The mirrors can be configured to automatically fold when the vehicle is locked and unfold when unlocked. This feature can be enabled or disabled by your Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

If the mirrors are accidentally knocked out of position (i.e. so only one is folded), press both buttons simultaneously to resynchronise.

Note: If the mirrors were folded using the switches, they will not unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.

Mirrors

Note: Up to 3 different exterior mirror positions can be stored and recalled using the driving position memory feature. See **14, DRIVING POSITION MEMORY**.

MIRROR DIP WHEN REVERSING

The mirrors can be configured so that when Reverse (R) gear is selected, the passenger door mirror is automatically adjusted to provide an improved viewing angle for reversing.

The exact dipped position can be adjusted using the joystick control, when the mirror is dipped. The next time reverse is selected, the newly adjusted position will be selected.

When the gear selector is moved out of reverse, or if vehicle speed exceeds 12 km/h (7.5 mph) while reversing, the mirror will return to its previous position.

Mirror dip can be selected or deselected from the Instrument panel menu. Select **Convenience Features** from the **Settings** menu, then select the desired option from the list.

Garage door opener

RADIO FREQUENCY TRANSCEIVER

In some countries, the Radio Frequency (RF) transceiver is also known as the HomeLink® Universal Transceiver.

The RF transceiver is located in the rear view mirror. It can be programmed to transmit the signals of up to 3 different hand held transmitters. These can be used to operate garage doors, entry gates, home lighting, security systems, or other RF operated remote devices.

⚠ Do not use the RF transceiver with any garage door opener that lacks the safety stop and reverse feature, as required by safety standards.

⚠ When programming the RF transceiver to a garage door opener or entry gate, make sure that the area is clear of people and objects. This will prevent potential harm or damage, as the gate or garage door will activate during programming.

ⓘ This device may suffer from interference, if operated in the vicinity of a mobile or fixed station transmitter. This interference is likely to affect the hand-held transmitter, as well as the RF transceiver.

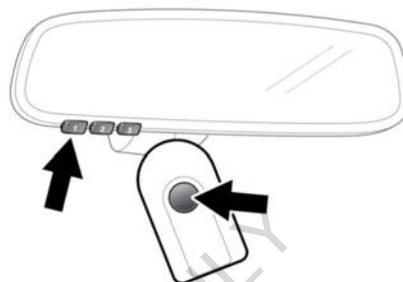
For further information, see **59, INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE**.

BEFORE PROGRAMMING

ⓘ When programming a remote device that may require you to press and re-press the hand-held transmitter, unplug the device during the programming process, to prevent possible motor failure.

For best results, fit a new battery to the hand-held transmitter before programming. If the remote device's receiver is equipped with an antenna, make sure the antenna is extended.

PROGRAMMING



E169455

To program the RF transceiver:

1. Switch the vehicle's ignition on.
2. Position the hand-held transmitter 25 to 75 mm from the rear view mirror.
3. Simultaneously press and hold the memory button on the hand-held transmitter, and the desired memory button on the RF transceiver. An indicator LED, located on the left side of the mirror, will start flashing slowly.
4. When the LED starts flashing quickly, release both buttons.

To operate the remote device, press and hold the programmed memory button on the RF transceiver for 2 seconds. If the LED illuminates continuously, the RF transceiver has been programmed successfully, and the remote device will operate.

Note: You may need to press the button on the RF transceiver up to 3 times.

If the remote device does not operate, and the LED flashes quickly, further programming will be required.

These additional programming steps may require assistance from another person.

1. Locate the **smart/learn program** button on the remote device you wish to program.

Garage door opener

Note: The name and location of this button may vary, depending on the manufacturer of the remote device.

2. Press and release the **smart/learn program** button, and within 30 seconds, press and hold the desired memory button on the RF transceiver for 2 seconds.

Note: You may need to press and hold the memory button on the RF transceiver for 2 seconds, a further 2 times.

Note: Some entry gate systems require you to cycle (press and re-press) the hand-held transmitter every 2 seconds during programming. If this is the case, continue to press and hold the memory button on the RF transceiver until the LED flashes quickly.

The RF transceiver should now be programmed. Repeat the programming steps, if you wish to add further remote devices to the RF transceiver.

To operate a programmed remote device, press and hold the relevant memory button on the transceiver. Release the button when the device starts operating.

REPROGRAMMING A SINGLE GARAGE DOOR OPENER BUTTON

To program a remote device to a previously programmed RF transceiver memory button:

1. Press and hold the desired RF transceiver memory button. After approximately 20 seconds, the LED will start to flash slowly.
2. Follow the instructions described in step (2) onwards, as described in **PROGRAMMING**.

TO ERASE ALL PROGRAMMING

To erase all programming from the RF transceiver:

1. Switch the vehicle's ignition on

2. Simultaneously press and hold memory buttons **1** and **3** on the RF transceiver.

After approximately 10 seconds, the RF transceiver LED will start to flash. At this point, release both memory buttons on the RF transceiver. All programming will have now been erased from the RF transceiver.

Note: Do not press and hold the buttons for longer than 20 seconds.

INFORMATION AND ASSISTANCE



It is recommended that when you sell the vehicle, you erase all programming from the RF transceiver.

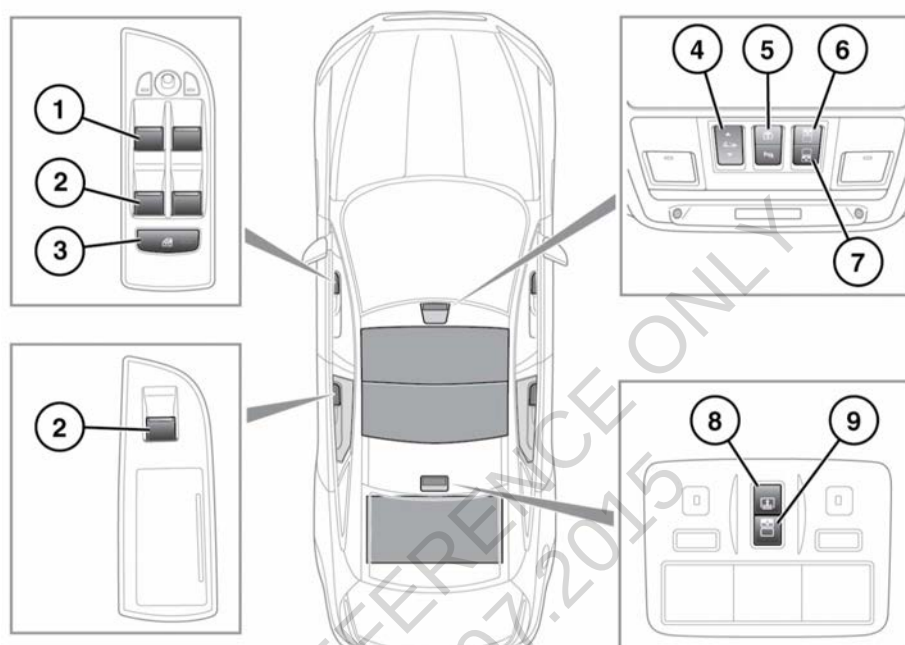
For information on the range of compatible remote devices, or for assistance, contact your Retailer/Authorised repairer. Alternatively, visit the HomeLink website **www.homelink.com**.

Note: Retain the original remote feature handset, for future programming requirements.

Note: The manufacturer is not responsible for any radio or TV interference caused by unauthorised modifications to this equipment. Such modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Windows

ELECTRIC WINDOWS



E170794

1. Front window switches: The windows will operate for 5 minutes after the engine is switched off, as long as none of the doors are opened.

⚠ Make sure that the Smart key is removed when leaving passengers in the vehicle. This will prevent unsupervised operation of the windows, sun blinds and sunroof, which may result in injury.

ⓘ Any ice should be removed from the windows prior to operation.

2. Rear window switches: The windows will operate for 5 minutes after the engine is switched off, as long as none of the doors are opened.

Note: The rear window switches are also used to operate the rear electric door blinds. See **61, SIDE WINDOW BLINDS**.

3. Rear isolator switch: Isolates the rear windows, rear door handles, rear electric seats, door sun blinds and rear sunroof blind.

⚠ If children are carried in the rear seats, the isolator switch should be used to prevent operation of the rear door handles and rear windows.

4. Sunroof: Press once to tilt the roof. Once tilted, press again to open the roof.

Windows

Press to close the roof from tilt. From the fully open position, press once to close to the tilt position, then press again to close fully.

Roof movement can be halted at any time by pressing the button again.

Note: The front roof blind will open when the roof is tilted or when the roof is fully opened.

- ❗ The roof blinds are electrically operated. Do not try to operate them manually.

- ❗ To prevent accidental damage, make sure any roof rack load will not interfere with the opening of the sunroof.

If the sunroof encounters resistance when closing it will stop, and then open fully. This is to prevent serious injury or damage to the mechanism.

5. Rear screen sun blind.
6. Rear sunroof blind: One push of the button will fully open or close the blind. Opening or closing cannot be halted part-way.
7. Front sunroof blind: One push of the button will fully open or close the blind. Opening or closing cannot be halted part-way.

Note: The blind cannot be closed when the sunroof is open.

8. Rear screen sun blind.
9. Rear sunroof blind: One push of the button will fully open or close the blind. Opening or closing cannot be halted part way.

SIDE WINDOW BLINDS

- ❗ Before operating the rear door electric sun blind, make sure that no objects or parts of the body are in a position to obstruct the operation of the sun blind.

Rear door electric sun blinds

To raise the door sun blind: With the rear window fully closed, pull and release the rear door window switch.

To lower the door sun blind: Push down and release the rear door window switch.

Note: The door sun blinds will operate for 5 minutes after the engine is switched off, unless a door is opened.

Door sun blind restrictions:

- All rear window switches will operate the respective door sun blinds.
- A door sun blind will only operate if the rear window is fully closed.
- The door sun blinds can only be fully raised or fully lowered, there is no part-way position.
- Anti-trap protection: If an obstruction is detected, the door sun blind will reverse to the fully opened or closed position.
- Anti-play/tamper protection: Deactivation will occur if the door sun blind is operated repeatedly in a short space of time (40 movements within 60 seconds). The sun blind will not operate again for approximately 60 seconds.

Note: If the rear door electric sun blind fails to operate correctly, the blind operation may need to be reset. See **198, SIDE WINDOW BLIND RESET**.

ONE-TOUCH WINDOW OPERATION

The front windows have one-touch open operation. Briefly press the switch down fully and release, the window will lower until fully open.

The rear windows open in 2 stages:

- Briefly press the switch down fully and release; the window will open 65 - 75 mm to the comfort stop position.

Windows

Note: This position reduces resonance (booming sound) that can occur when driving with a front window open. Open the rear window on the same side of the vehicle as the open front window, to reduce resonance.

- Briefly press the switch down fully and release a second time, to fully open the window.

The front and rear windows also have one-touch close operation. Briefly pull the switch up fully and release, the window will rise until fully closed.

Pressing or pulling the switch again will stop a window in one-touch operation.

WINDOW ANTI-TRAP PROTECTION

 **Before closing a window, make sure that no occupants have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Death or serious injury could occur, even with an anti-trap system.**

Anti-trap protection is designed to stop window movement if an obstruction or resistance is detected. Check the window and its aperture and remove any obstructions. The override procedure is as follows:-

1. Attempt to close the window. Anti-trap will prevent closure and lower the window.
2. Within 10 seconds, attempt to raise the window again. Anti-trap will prevent closure and lower the window.
3. Attempt to close the window for a third time, this time holding the switch in the close position. The window will raise while the switch is held. Hold until closed.

Note: If this procedure fails to remove the blockage, or if the windows do not operate correctly, the window operation may need to be reset. See **197, WINDOW RESET**.

SUNROOF ANTI-TRAP MECHANISM

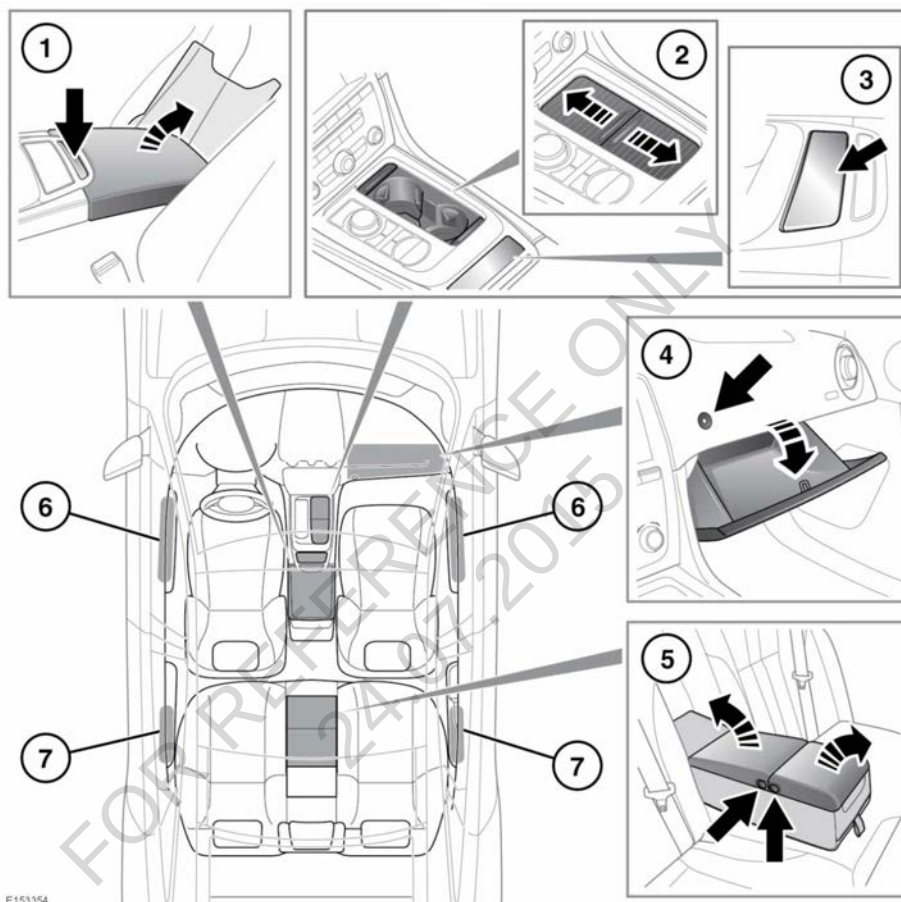
 **Before closing the sunroof, make sure that no occupants have any part of their body in a position where it could be trapped. Even with an anti-trap system death or serious injury could occur.**

The anti-trap mechanism can be overridden to allow the roof to be closed when movement is restricted by dirt. To override the anti-trap mechanism, press and hold the front of the switch until the roof reaches the closed position.

If the sunroof fails to operate correctly, it may need to be reset. See **197, SUNROOF RESET**.

Storage compartments

STORAGE COMPARTMENTS



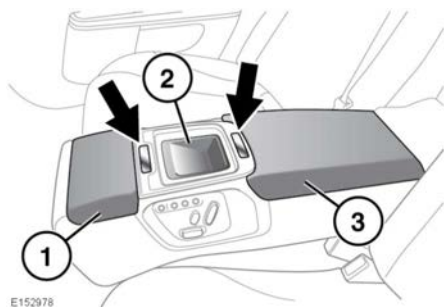
1. Cubby box: To access, press the button.
2. Cup holders: To access, slide the covers apart.
-  **Do not drink, or use the drinks holders when driving.**
3. Storage area or ashtray (depending on vehicle specification): Press and release, where indicated, to open.

4. Glove-box: Open using the glove-box release (arrowed).
Note: When Valet Mode is selected, the glove-box release is disabled.
5. Rear armrest cubby box: Press the side catches to access the cup holders or storage area.
6. Front door stowage.

Storage compartments

7. Rear door stowage.

Executive class rear seats



1. Cup holders: To access, press the button.



Do not drink, or use the drinks holders when driving.

2. Storage area.

3. Rear storage compartment: To access, press the button.

AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS



Only use Jaguar approved accessories. Using any other equipment may damage the vehicle's electrical system. If you are in any doubt, contact a Retailer/Authorised Repairer.



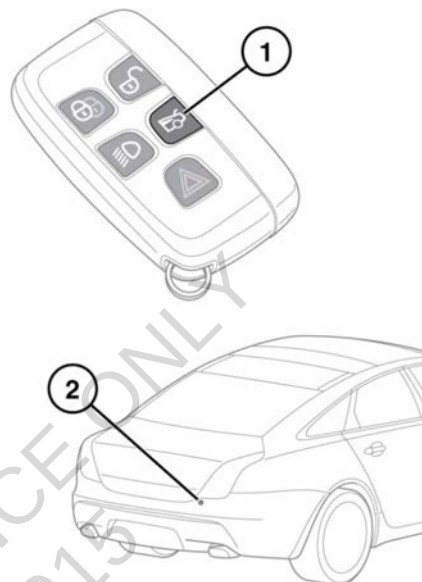
To access the auxiliary power sockets, remove or pull out the protective cover.

For vehicles fitted with cigar lighters, these are also auxiliary power sockets. To access the socket, remove the cigar lighter.

Luggage compartment

OPENING AND CLOSING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT

- ❗ Do not open the luggage compartment if a cycle rack is fitted. Remove any cycles and/or racks before opening the luggage compartment.
- ❗ The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container, or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including in a laptop bag), games console, etc.
- ❗ The vehicle must not be driven with the luggage compartment lid unlatched and not completely closed.
- ❗ Any items placed in the luggage compartment should be arranged to allow the lid to be completely closed and securely latched.
- ❗ Do not repeatedly attempt to close the luggage compartment after it automatically re-opens, or the latch may overheat. If the cause of the automatic re-opening cannot be determined, then unlock all of the doors and the luggage compartment with the Smart key. Make sure that all of the doors, the bonnet, and the luggage compartment are completely closed and then lock the vehicle again with the Smart key.



E142723

The luggage compartment can be opened using the appropriate button on the Smart key (1), or via Keyless entry. It can also be opened using the exterior release (2), provided the doors are unlocked and the gear selector is in Park (P).

To close the luggage compartment, lower the luggage compartment lid to the fully latched/closed position.

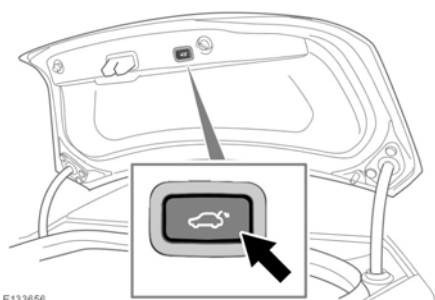
Powered luggage compartments can also be opened by pressing the interior release button, located on the driver's side lower fascia. See **280, DRIVER CONTROLS**. When the lid is fully open, press the button again to close.

Note: If the button is pressed again, before the luggage compartment lid is fully open, then movement of the lid will stop.

Luggage compartment



While the powered luggage compartment is open, the locking latch is exposed. Do not attempt to manually close the latch, as it may also automatically soft-close and trap items or body parts.



Powered luggage compartments can also be closed by pressing the luggage compartment close button.

Note: If an obstruction is detected, the powered luggage compartment lid will return to the fully open position. Remove any obstruction and then press the close button again.

If the luggage compartment lid is opened, after the vehicle has been Single locked (See 9, **SINGLE LOCKING**) or Double locked (See 9, **DOUBLE LOCKING**), make sure of the following to successfully close and re-lock the luggage compartment:

The Smart key needs to remain outside and at a distance of less than 1m from the rear of the vehicle when closing the luggage compartment lid; either manually or when using the powered luggage compartment close button.

The hazard warning lamps will flash once to confirm the vehicle is locked.

If a valid Smart key is detected within the vehicle, or a valid Smart key is not detected within a metre of the rear of the vehicle, then the luggage compartment lid will re-open to the unlatched position and an audible mislock warning will sound. This will also prevent the operation of the close button, for vehicles with a powered luggage compartment lid.

Note: Do not store any valid Smart keys inside the vehicle.

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT OPENING HEIGHT

It is possible to set the maximum height to which the luggage compartment lid will open. This is useful in parking areas with very low roofs or just for ease of use.

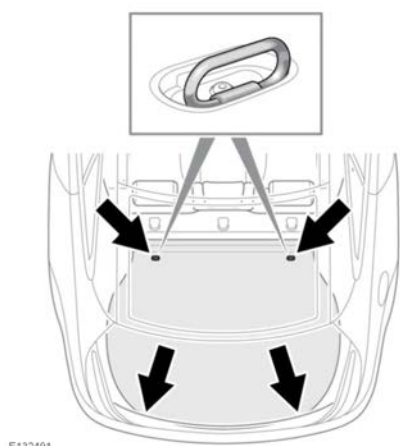
- Open the luggage compartment lid to the position which you want to set as the maximum height.
- Press and hold (for 10 seconds) the luggage compartment close button.
- Close the luggage compartment, then open again to check that it opens to the programmed height.

The maximum opening height is now set.

To reset the maximum opening height to full, repeat the process, but fully open the luggage compartment lid before pressing and holding the button.

Luggage compartment

LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS



E132491



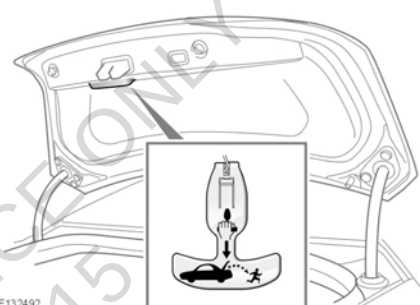
All items carried in the vehicle should be properly secured.

Four load securing points are provided in the rear luggage area to assist in safely securing items.

Note: A range of approved luggage retention accessories are available from your retailer/Authorised Repairer.

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT EMERGENCY RELEASE

The mechanical luggage compartment release provides a means of escape in the event of someone being locked in the luggage compartment. Adults are advised to familiarise themselves with the operation of the release handle.



E132492

The release handle glows in the dark and is located on the inside of the luggage compartment lid. To open the luggage compartment from the inside, pull the handle while pushing the luggage compartment lid upwards.

Return the handle to its stowage position after use.

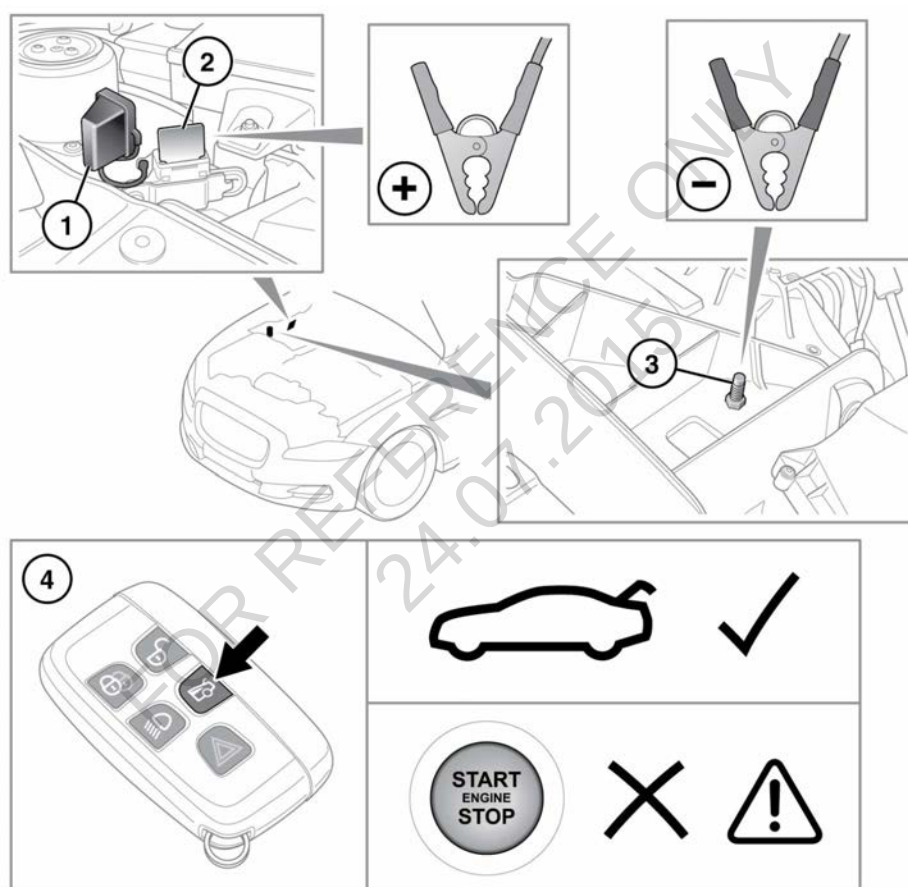
Luggage compartment

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT RELEASE WHEN BATTERY IS DISCHARGED

If the battery becomes discharged when the luggage compartment is shut, it will be necessary to supply power to the release circuit in order to open it.



Supplying power to the release circuit in the following manner may cause a fuse to blow. For this reason it is recommended that the following procedure is only carried out by suitably qualified persons.



E142724

With the bonnet open and the engine cover removed (see **216, FUSE BOX LOCATIONS**), connect jump lead cables to a suitable 12v supply, then proceed as follows:

1. Remove the cover from the positive terminal.

Luggage compartment

2. Attach the positive jump lead clamp to the positive terminal.
 3. Attach the negative jump lead clamp to the earthing post.
 4. Press the luggage compartment release button on the remote control.
- ⓘ Do not attempt to start the vehicle with power supplied in this way.

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

Starting the engine

STARTING THE ENGINE

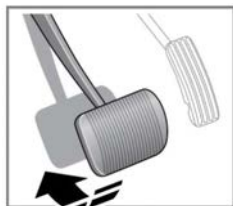


Never start the engine, or leave it running, when the vehicle is in an enclosed space. Exhaust gases are poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and death if inhaled.



If the engine fails to start, do not continue cranking as this will discharge the battery. It may also damage the catalytic converter due to unburnt fuel passing through the exhaust.

Note: The Smart key may not be detected if it is placed within a metal container or if it is shielded by a device with a back-lit LCD screen, such as a smart phone, laptop (including when inside a laptop bag), game console etc. Keep the Smart key clear of such devices when attempting Keyless entry or Keyless starting.



E142752

To start the engine:

1. Make sure that a valid Smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure that Park (P) or Neutral (N) is selected.
3. Firmly press the brake pedal.
4. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.



Note: For vehicles with diesel engines, the delay period before cranking begins will be longer in low ambient temperatures due to extended glow plug operation. During this extended delay the brake pedal must remain pressed.

Once the engine has started, the brake pedal can be released if it is safe to do so.

SWITCHING OFF THE ENGINE

When the vehicle is stationary:

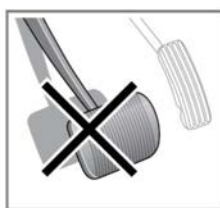
1. Make sure that the vehicle is parked with Park (P) selected and the parking brake applied.
2. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.



It is not advisable to switch off the engine while the vehicle is moving. However, if a situation arises where engine switch off is urgent, the following procedure applies:

1. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button for 2 seconds, or
2. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button twice within 3 seconds.

SWITCHING ON THE IGNITION



E142753



To switch on the ignition without starting the engine:

Starting the engine

1. Make sure the brake pedal is not pressed and that a valid Smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button until the warning lamps illuminate.
3. Release the engine **START/STOP** button.



If the brake pedal is applied when the engine **START/STOP** button is pressed, the engine will start.

ROLLING RE-START

A rolling restart can be initiated by selecting Neutral (N) and pressing the engine **START/STOP** button.

KEYLESS START BACKUP

If the vehicle has been unlocked using the emergency key blade or the Smart key is not detected by the vehicle, it will be necessary to use the keyless start backup to disarm the alarm and start the engine.

The keyless start backup can only be used when the message **Smart Key Not Found - Refer to Handbook** is displayed in the Message centre.



E142809

1. Position the Smart key flat against the fascia in the position shown.
2. Firmly depress the brake pedal.
3. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button.

Once the engine has started, the brake pedal can be released if it is safe to do so.

If the Smart key is not recognised, or the engine still fails to start, consult a Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

IF THE ENGINE FAILS TO START

Note: If the engine fails to crank when the engine **START/STOP** button is pressed and there has been a recent collision, the fuel system inertia switch may have been tripped. Seek qualified assistance.

Note: The following information applies to petrol engine vehicles only.

If the engine persistently fails to start:

1. Make sure the brake pedal is not pressed and that a valid Smart key is inside the vehicle.
2. Make sure that Park (P) or Neutral (N) is selected.
3. Press and hold the engine **START/STOP** button until the warning lamps illuminate.
4. Slowly press the accelerator pedal fully and hold it in the fully pressed position.
5. Press and release the engine **START/STOP** button. The engine will begin to crank.
6. Release the accelerator pedal when the engine starts.

If the engine still fails to start, or fails to crank, consult a Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

Intelligent stop/start

INTELLIGENT STOP/START

The Intelligent stop/start system is designed to improve fuel efficiency and is automatically activated when the vehicle's ignition is switched on. Unless it is required to support other vehicle systems, the engine will switch off if the vehicle is stopped, for example, at traffic lights. When the brake pedal is released and a drive gear is selected, the engine will restart automatically.

Note: Always disable the Intelligent stop/start system before wading.

During operation of the Intelligent stop/start system, a warning lamp will illuminate. See **47, INTELLIGENT STOP/START (GREEN)**.

To activate an automatic engine stop, stop the vehicle from a speed greater than 4 km/h (2.5 mph). Apply sufficient brake pressure to make sure the vehicle is stationary.

To activate an automatic engine restart, release the brake pedal with Drive (**D**) or Sport (**S**) selected.

The engine will also restart if one of the following occurs:

- Intelligent stop/start is deactivated.
- The accelerator pedal is pressed.
- An automatic transmission shift paddle is used to select a gear.
- Reverse (**R**) gear is selected.
- The Climate control system demand increases.
- The vehicle's speed exceeds approximately 1 km/h (0.5 mph).
- The vehicle's battery charge becomes low.
- Brake vacuum has been reduced, for example, using the brake pedal repeatedly with the engine off.

The following conditions will prevent an automatic engine stop:

- An automatic transmission shift paddle has been used to select a gear.
- The external temperature is less than approximately 0°C.
- The external temperature is more than approximately 40°C.
- The engine has not reached its operating temperature.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- Demand from the Climate control system requires the engine to be running, for example, when in Defrost mode.
- The vehicle's battery charge is low.
- Intelligent stop/start is deactivated.
- The bonnet is opened.

Note: Even when activated, it is normal that the Intelligent stop/start system will not always stop the engine when the vehicle is stationary, and may restart the engine prior to setting off.

DEACTIVATING INTELLIGENT STOP/START



To switch the Intelligent stop/start system off, press the **ECO** stop/start button. For more information, see **280, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

To confirm that the system has been switched off, the button LED will extinguish, and the message **ECO Stop/Start Off** is momentarily displayed in the Message centre.

If the **ECO** stop/start button is pressed while there is a fault with the system, the message **ECO stop/start fault** is momentarily displayed in the Message centre.

Note: If the **ECO** stop/start button is pressed while an automatic engine stop is in progress, the engine will restart.

Intelligent stop/start

Note: The Intelligent stop/start system will automatically reactivate the next time the vehicle's ignition is switched on.

DRIVER EXIT

Note: The Driver exit feature is only available when Intelligent stop/start is enabled.

To prevent the vehicle from being inadvertently left in a driveable condition, the vehicle will detect when a driver is not present, and automatically switch off the ignition system.

If Drive (**D**), Sport (**S**), or Neutral (**N**) is selected, the Driver exit feature will switch the vehicle's ignition off if the following conditions exist:

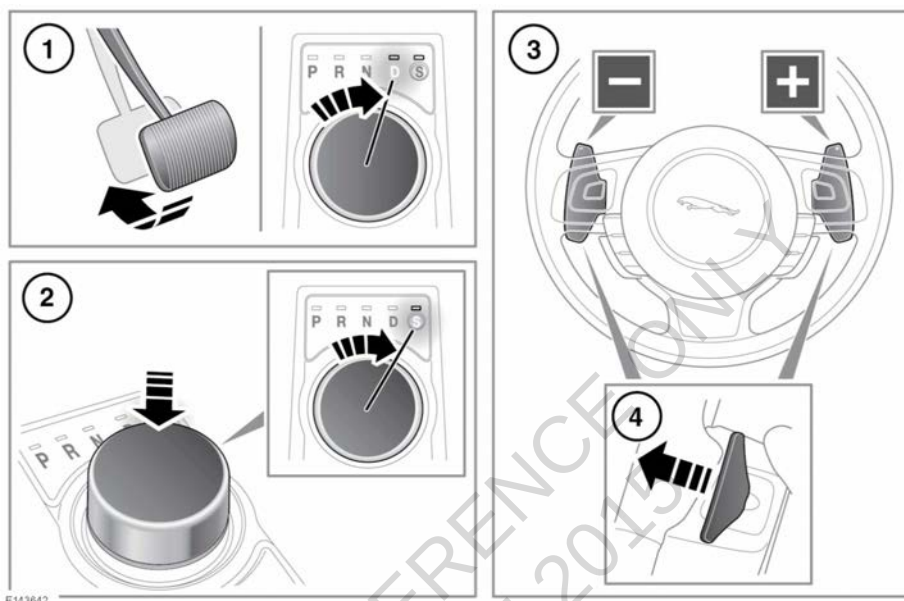
- The driver's seat belt is unbuckled, and:
- The brake pedal is released.

If Park (**P**) is selected, the Driver exit feature will switch the vehicle's ignition off, if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled.

Once the vehicle's ignition has been switched off, the vehicle can be locked if required. See **9, SINGLE LOCKING**.

Gearbox

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



1. To select Drive (**D**) or Reverse (**R**) gear, press the brake pedal and rotate the rotary drive selector.
2. To select Sport mode, from **D** press the rotary drive selector down and rotate to **S**.
3. Gear shift paddles (left paddle for downshifts, right paddle for upshifts), see **75, MANUAL GEAR SELECTION**.

Note: The gear shift paddles can be configured to operate in '**S only**' or '**D and S**' via the **Driving Features** menu. See **41, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

4. Pull briefly to change gear.
To exit manual mode, either pull and hold the shift-up paddle for approximately one second (to return directly to automatic operation in **D** or **S**) or, if in **S**, rotate the gear selector to the **D** position.

Note: The selected gear will be displayed in the instrument panel, also see **90, DYNAMIC**.

- ⚠ Never select the Park (**P**) position while the vehicle is in motion.
- ⚠ Never select the Reverse (**R**) position while the vehicle is in forward motion.
- ⚠ Never select a forward gear while the vehicle is moving backwards.
- ⚠ Do not rev the engine or allow it to run above normal idle speed while selecting **D** or **R**, or while the vehicle is stationary with any gear selected.
- ⚠ Do not allow the vehicle to remain stationary with a drive gear selected and the engine running. Always select Park **P** or Neutral **N** if the engine is to idle for a prolonged period.

Gearbox

If the rotary drive selector is obstructed, remove the obstruction and then start the engine. The selector should elevate.

If the rotary drive selector fails to elevate and there is no obstruction, a fault in the system is indicated. The selector can be used in the lowered position, but be aware that it will not automatically select **P** when the engine is switched off. Therefore **P** should be selected manually. The fault should be rectified by a Retailer/Authorised Repairer at the earliest opportunity.

MANUAL GEAR SELECTION

When the rotary drive selector is in the **D** position (unless set to '**S only**' mode), manual mode may be directly accessed by the single action of operating the steering wheel mounted shift paddles.

If continued use of manual mode is required, the rotary drive selector may be subsequently moved to the **S** position to enter permanent manual mode.

If the rotary drive selector remains in the **D** position, temporary manual mode will be held while the driver is accelerating, decelerating, cornering or continuing to request shifts via the paddles.



When the transmission is set to permanent manual mode (i.e., using the paddles to change gear while in the **S** position and Dynamic mode is selected, see **90, DYNAMIC**) transmission upshifts are fully controlled by the driver. This means that the transmission will not change up a gear automatically, even when the vehicle's rev limit is reached. The gear position indicator in the Message centre will glow **amber**, to indicate that the next gear should be selected. The gear shift warning lamp will also illuminate. See **90, DYNAMIC**.

ROTARY GEAR SELECTOR

The rotary drive selector elevates out of the centre console when the engine is started, in readiness for gear selection.

P should be selected before switching off the engine. However, it is possible to switch the engine off with **R**, **D**, or **S** selected - the selector will automatically select **P**, while retracting into the centre console.

Note: *If the engine is switched off with **N** selected, the system will wait for 10 minutes before selecting **P**. This procedure is to allow the vehicle to be conveyed through a car wash only and should not be used for vehicle recovery purposes.*

To prevent the transmission from automatically selecting **P** (e.g., for vehicle recovery purposes) it is necessary to activate the Emergency park release. Vehicle recovery should only be undertaken by qualified personnel.

LIMP-HOME MODE

Note: *The driver should be aware that the vehicle's performance will be reduced and must take this into account when driving. Also the use of the gear shift paddles will be disabled. In this event, seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.*

In the event of an electrical or mechanical failure, transmission operation will be limited. **P**, **R**, **N**, **D** and **S** may still be used to enable the vehicle to be driven to a safe area.

Some faults will cause the selector to be locked in position until the ignition is switched off. If the selected range flashes, it signifies that the driver request cannot be engaged. Re-select **N** and repeat the attempt.

If the transmission is still unable to select the requested gear, contact your Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

Stability control

DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC)



Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is unable to compensate for driver misjudgement. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention, in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants and the other road users.

DSC optimises vehicle stability, even in critical driving situations. The system controls dynamic stability when accelerating and when starting from a standstill. Additionally, it identifies unstable driving behaviour, such as understeer and oversteer and helps to keep the vehicle under control by manipulating the engine output and applying the brakes at individual wheels. Some noise may be generated when the brakes are applied.

TRACDSC



Vehicle safety may be reduced by inappropriate use of TracDSC. TracDSC should only be used in suitable conditions.

TracDSC is an alternative setting of DSC, with reduced system interventions. With TracDSC engaged, traction may be increased, although stability may be reduced compared to normal DSC. TracDSC is intended for use only on dry tarmac, by suitably experienced drivers. TracDSC should not be selected for other surfaces or by drivers with insufficient skill and training to operate the vehicle safely with TracDSC function engaged.

SWITCHING BETWEEN DSC AND TRACDSC



Press and hold the DSC switch for less than 10 seconds (3 seconds for XJR). The Message centre will temporarily display either **TracDSC** or **DSC ON**.

- The warning lamp in the instrument panel will illuminate while TracDSC is selected.
- The warning lamp will flash when DSC or TracDSC is active (cruise control will automatically disengage if this occurs).

SWITCHING DSC OFF

- Press and hold the DSC switch for more than 10 seconds (3 seconds for XJR).
- The Message centre will display **DSC OFF** and a short warning chime will sound.
- The DSC OFF warning lamp in the Instrument panel will illuminate.

SWITCHING DSC ON

- Press and release the DSC switch.
- The DSC system will switch on, the Message centre will temporarily display **DSC ON**.
- The DSC OFF warning lamp in the Instrument panel will be extinguished.

Note: *Switching the engine off and then on again, will always revert DSC status to DSC ON, regardless of which mode is selected.*

ACTIVE DIFFERENTIAL CONTROL (Supercharged vehicles only)

The Active differential control (E-diff) improves traction on uneven road surfaces and can also improve stability in oversteer situations.

Stability control

If the warning message **EDIFF SYSTEM FAULT** is displayed and DSC is off, then TracDSC will be automatically selected. The vehicle can still be driven and DSC modes can be selected, but seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

If the warning message **EDIFF NOT AVAILABLE** is displayed, the system has temporarily shut down to prevent overheating. The vehicle can still be driven and the E-diff will be operational again when the system has cooled sufficiently.

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015



Suspension

ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS

If the general warning lamp illuminates (see **44**, **GENERAL WARNING/INFORMATION MESSAGE (AMBER)**) and the message **ADAPTIVE DYNAMICS FAULT** is displayed in the Message centre, some reduction in ride comfort may be experienced. If the fault persists, consult a Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

Brakes

IMPORTANT INFORMATION

-  **Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal whilst the vehicle is in motion.**
-  **Never allow the vehicle to coast (freewheel) with the engine switched off. The engine must be running to provide full braking assistance. The brakes will still function with the engine off, but far more pressure will be required to operate them.**
-  **If the red brake warning lamp illuminates, safely bring the vehicle to a stop, as quickly as possible and seek qualified assistance.**
-  **Never place non-approved floor matting or any other obstructions under the pedals. This restricts pedal travel and braking efficiency.**

Driving through heavy rain or water can have an adverse effect on braking efficiency. Under such circumstances, it is recommended that you lightly apply the brakes intermittently, to dry the brakes.

HILL START ASSIST

Hill start assist activates when starting a hill ascent from a stationary position. When the brake pedal is released, Hill start assist smoothly releases the brake pressure, allowing the vehicle approximately 2 seconds to move away without rolling backwards.

Any fault with Hill start assist will be indicated by the Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) warning lamp being illuminated and a message in the Message centre. See **46, DYNAMIC STABILITY CONTROL (DSC) (AMBER)**.

EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)

If the driver rapidly applies the brakes, EBA automatically boosts the braking force to its maximum, in order to bring the vehicle to a halt as quickly as possible. If the driver applies the brakes slowly, but conditions mean that ABS operates on the front wheels, EBA will increase the braking force in order to apply ABS control to the rear wheels.

EBA stops operating as soon as the brake pedal is released.

A fault with the EBA system is indicated by the brake warning lamp (see **45, BRAKE (AMBER)**) illuminating and an associated warning message. Drive with care, avoiding heavy brake application and seek qualified assistance.

ELECTRONIC BRAKE-FORCE DISTRIBUTION (EBD)

EBD controls the balance of braking forces supplied to the front and rear wheels, in order to maintain maximum braking efficiency.

If the vehicle has a light load (only the driver in the vehicle for example), EBD will reduce the braking force applied to the rear wheels. If the vehicle is heavily laden, EBD will allow greater braking force to the rear wheels.

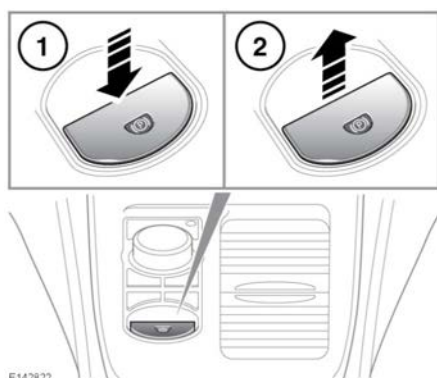
A fault with the EBD system is indicated by the brake warning lamp (see **44, BRAKE (RED)**) illuminating and an associated warning message. Gently and safely stop the vehicle and seek qualified assistance.

Brakes

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE (EPB)



The parking brakes operate on the rear wheels. Therefore, secure parking of the vehicle is dependent on being on a hard and stable surface.



The switch which operates the EPB is mounted on the centre console, to the rear of the gear selector.

To disengage the EPB (1): With the ignition system on, or with the engine running, apply the brake pedal and press down on the EPB switch.

The Drive away release feature allows the EPB to release automatically as the vehicle is driven away.

If the EPB is applied while the vehicle is stationary and **D** or **R** is selected, applying the throttle will automatically release the EPB.

Note: Automatic release of the EPB is only possible when the driver's door is closed, or the driver's seat belt is buckled.

The EPB is also automatically released when the gear selector is moved from the **P** position.

If the EPB is inadvertently applied when the vehicle is moving at above 3 km/h (1.8 mph), **Caution! Park Brake Applied** is displayed in the Message centre, the warning indicator in the Instrument panel will illuminate and a warning chime will sound.

If the EPB is applied while the vehicle is moving, releasing the switch or pressing the accelerator will disengage the EPB.

Note: If the accelerator pedal is already pressed before the EPB switch has been pulled up, the EPB will be applied.

Note: If the vehicle is in motion, the EPB should only be used as an emergency brake.



Always apply the EPB when the vehicle is parked.

To engage the EPB (2): Pull the EPB switch upwards and release. The switch will return to the neutral position.

The EPB warning lamp in the Instrument panel will illuminate. See **45, PARKING BRAKE (RED)**.

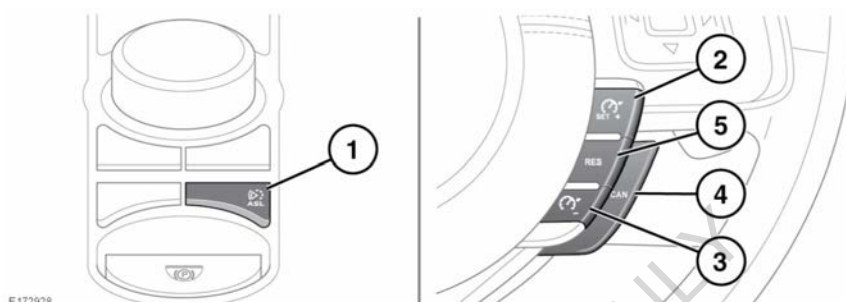
The warning lamp in the Instrument panel will remain on for a short time, if the EPB is applied when the ignition system is reverted to Convenience mode.

If a fault in the system is detected, **Park Brake Fault** or **Cannot Apply Park Brake** will be displayed in the Message centre. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

If the battery has been discharged or disconnected, **Apply Foot And Park Brake** will be displayed in the Message centre when the ignition is next switched on. Press the brake pedal and pull the EPB switch up to apply the EPB. This is required to reset the EPB system. The EPB will now function correctly.

Automatic speed limiter (ASL)

ASL CONTROLS



ASL allows a speed limit to be set that the driver does not wish to exceed.

⚠ In certain conditions, such as a steep downhill gradient, the vehicle speed may exceed the set speed limit. This is because engine braking is unable to maintain or reduce the vehicle speed.

The ASL button switches between Cruise control and ASL. The systems cannot be used simultaneously. ASL operates at speeds between 0 km/h (0 mph) and the Maximum vehicle speed, and can be set at speeds between 32 km/h (20 mph) and Maximum vehicle speed minus 8 km/h (5 mph).

Note: Although ASL only operates at speeds above 32 km/h (20 mph), the maximum speed limit can be set while the vehicle is stationary.

1. ASL on/off: The ASL indicator lamp will illuminate when ASL is active. See **46, AUTOMATIC SPEED LIMITER (AMBER)**.
2. Set/increase speed limit: Press to move the indicator on the speedometer to the required speed.

When a speed has been set, the engine will respond normally up to the set speed. Further accelerator pressure will not increase the speed beyond the set speed unless sudden, rapid acceleration (kickdown) is applied. If kickdown is initiated, ASL will be suspended and will not be reactivated until the vehicle speed is below the set speed.

3. Decrease speed limit: Press to move the indicator on the speedometer to the required speed.
4. Suspend ASL assistance: ASL can also be suspended by applying sudden, rapid acceleration (kickdown).
5. Resume ASL assistance: ASL will only resume if the vehicle speed is less than the set speed and greater than 32 km/h (20 mph). If these criteria are not met, a message will be displayed in the Message centre.

Cruise control

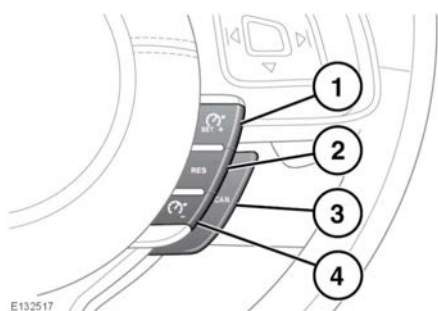
USING CRUISE CONTROL



In certain conditions, such as a steep gradient, the vehicle speed may exceed the set cruising speed. This is because engine braking is unable to maintain or reduce the vehicle speed. Driver intervention may be required.

The system is operated by controls mounted on the steering wheel. The driver can also intervene at any time by use of the brake or accelerator pedals.

Note: If the accelerator pedal is pressed for more than 5 minutes, cruise control will be cancelled.



1. **SET+:** Press to set the speed or to increase the set speed. The cruise control warning lamp will illuminate to confirm cruise control is operational (see 47, **CRUISE CONTROL (GREEN)**).

The cruising speed can also be increased using the accelerator. When the desired speed is reached, press the button to set and maintain the new speed and then release the accelerator.

Note: Cruise control can only be engaged at speeds in excess of 30 km/h (18 mph).

2. **RES:** Press to resume the set speed.



RES should be used only if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.

3. **CANCEL:** Press to cancel but retain the set speed in memory.

Cruise control will also be cancelled if the brake pedal is pressed, the gear selector is moved to Neutral (**N**), or if DSC is activated.

4. Press to decrease the set speed.

Adaptive cruise control

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system is designed to aid the driver to maintain a gap from the vehicle ahead or a set road speed if there is no slower vehicle ahead.



ACC is not a collision warning or avoidance system. Additionally, ACC will not react to:

- Pedestrians or objects in the roadway.
- Oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

The ACC system uses a radar sensor, which projects a beam directly forward of the vehicle, to detect objects ahead.

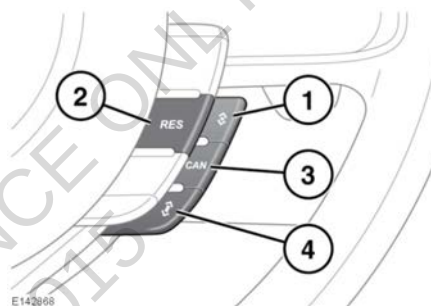
The radar sensor is mounted behind the badge in the upper grille, to provide a clear view forward for the radar beam.

- Only use ACC when conditions are favourable (i.e., main roads with traffic moving in lanes).
- Do not use in poor visibility, specifically fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.
- Do not use on icy or slippery roads.
- It is the driver's responsibility to stay alert, drive safely and be in control of the vehicle at all times.
- Keep the front of the vehicle free from dirt, metal badges or objects, including vehicle front protectors, which may prevent the sensor from operating.
- Do not use ACC when entering or leaving a motorway.
- Do not use during abrupt or sharp turns, e.g., traffic islands, junctions, areas with many parked vehicles or areas shared with pedestrians.

USING ACC

The system is operated by controls mounted on the steering wheel. The driver can also intervene at any time, by use of the brake or accelerator pedals.

Setting the vehicle's speed, activating and deactivating ACC is done in the same way as using Cruise control. See **82, USING CRUISE CONTROL**.



1. Gap decrease button.
2. **RES** (Resume): Resumes the ACC set speed after it has been disengaged.
3. **CAN** (Cancel) button.
4. Gap increase button.

ENTERING FOLLOW MODE



When in Follow mode, the vehicle will not decelerate automatically to a stop, nor will the vehicle always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a collision.

Once a set speed has been selected, the driver can release the accelerator and the set road speed will be maintained.

Adaptive cruise control

When a vehicle ahead enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle's speed will be adjusted automatically until the gap to the vehicle ahead corresponds to the default gap setting (gap level 3). The vehicle is now in **Follow mode**. The amber warning lamp in the Instrument panel will be illuminated, see **46, FOLLOW MODE (AMBER)**.

The Message centre will display the gap, set in the form of a vehicle with a varying number of bars in front of it.

The vehicle will then maintain the constant time gap to the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle ahead moves out of lane or out of view.
- A new gap distance is set.

If necessary, the vehicle's brakes will be automatically applied, slowing the vehicle and maintaining the gap to the vehicle in front.

The maximum braking which is applied by the ACC system is limited and can be overridden by the driver applying the brakes, if required.

Note: Driver braking will cancel ACC.

If the ACC system predicts that its maximum braking level will not be sufficient, then an audible warning will sound while the ACC continues to brake. **DRIVER INTERVENE** will be displayed in the Message centre. The driver should take immediate action.

When in Follow mode, the vehicle will automatically return to the set speed when the road ahead is clear, for instance when:

- The vehicle in front accelerates or changes lane.
- The driver changes lane to either side or enters an exit lane.

The driver should intervene, if appropriate.

If a direction indicator is used, ACC will reduce the gap to the vehicle ahead so as to respond more quickly to the anticipated manoeuvre. If a manoeuvre is not actioned, the previous gap will be restored after a few seconds. Enhanced response may not occur if ACC detects that it is inappropriate, i.e., you are already too close to the vehicle ahead or you are already in another lane.

CHANGING THE FOLLOW MODE SET GAP



It is the driver's responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

Four gap settings are available and the selected gap setting will be displayed in the Message centre when either gap adjustment button is pressed.

Each gap level is indicated by an additional bar in front of the vehicle icon in the Message centre (one bar (gap level 1) being the shortest, four bars (gap level 4) being the longest). After the ignition is switched on, the default gap (gap level 3) will be automatically selected, ready for ACC operation.

If Winter mode is selected, then the longest gap (gap level 4) will initially be selected.

OVERRIDING THE SPEED AND FOLLOW MODE



Whenever the driver is overriding the ACC by depressing the accelerator pedal, the ACC will not automatically apply the brakes to maintain separation from any vehicle ahead.

Adaptive cruise control

The set speed and gap can be overridden by pressing the accelerator pedal when cruising at constant speed or in Follow mode. If the vehicle is in Follow mode, the warning lamp will go out when the ACC is overridden by the driver using the accelerator and **CRUISE OVERRIDE** will be displayed on the Message centre. When the accelerator is released the ACC function will operate again and vehicle speed will decrease to the set speed, or a lower speed if Follow mode is active.

QUEUE ASSIST

Queue assist is an enhancement of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and, when active, will follow a vehicle ahead to a standstill. It is intended for use in lines of traffic on major roads, where minimal steering is required.

If a vehicle ahead slows to a halt, Queue assist will bring the vehicle to a stop and hold it stationary.

While the vehicle is held stationary, Queue assist will request the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to apply if:

- The driver cancels Queue assist.
- The vehicle is stopped for more than 3 minutes.
- Driver intention to exit the vehicle is detected.
- A malfunction is detected.

As the vehicle ahead moves away, a brief press on the accelerator will resume ACC operation.

At very low speed, Queue assist may stop for stationary objects, e.g., when the vehicle ahead changes lane to reveal a stationary object. The vehicle's radar cannot always distinguish between a stationary vehicle and a fixed object like a road sign, drain cover or temporary barrier. This may cause unexpected braking or cancellation and the driver should intervene, if appropriate.

ACC AUTO OFF

ACC will disengage, but not clear the memory when:

- The **CAN** button is pressed.
- The brake pedal is pressed.
- Neutral (**N**), Park (**P**) or Reverse (**R**) gear is selected.
- Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) activates.
- Maximum vehicle speed is reached.

ACC will disengage, and clear the memory when:

- The ignition system is switched off.
- A fault occurs in the ACC system.

RESUMING THE SPEED AND FOLLOW MODE



RES should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.

By pressing the **RES** button after ACC has been cancelled, for example, after braking, the ACC will become active again provided that the set speed memory has not been erased. The original set speed will be resumed (unless a vehicle ahead causes Follow mode to become active) and the set speed will be displayed in the Message centre for 4 seconds. Queue assist may be resumed above 10 km/h (6 mph).

Note: When the set speed is resumed, the rate of acceleration is influenced by the previously set Follow mode gap. A closer set gap will promote greater acceleration.

Note: When resuming a set speed while in a curve, acceleration is reduced. A more severe curve will reduce acceleration further. Remember that ACC and Queue assist are primarily for use when minimal steering is required.

Adaptive cruise control

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ACC

The system acts by regulating the speed of the vehicle using engine control and the brakes. Gear changes may occur in response to deceleration or acceleration while in ACC mode.

ACC is not a collision avoidance system. However, during some situations, the system may provide the driver with an indication that intervention is required.

An audible alarm will sound, accompanied by the message **DRIVER INTERVENE** if the ACC detects:

- A failure has occurred while the system is active.
- That using maximum ACC braking only is not sufficient.

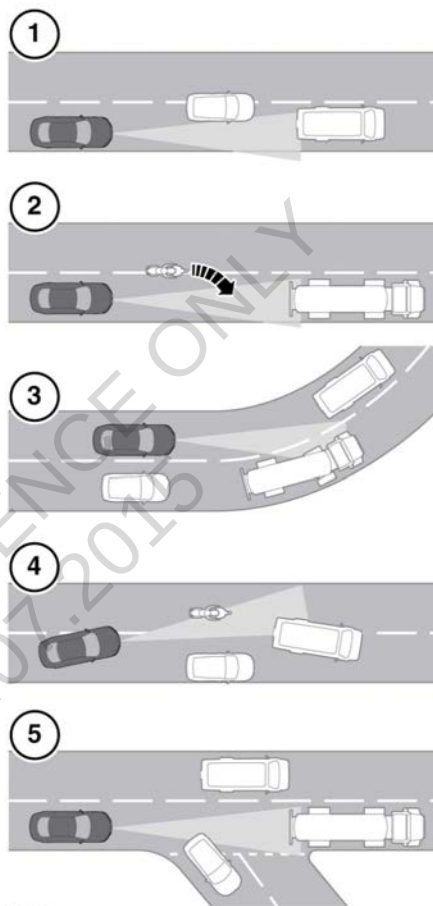
Note: ACC operates when the gear selector is in position **S** or **D**.

Note: When ACC is engaged, the accelerator pedal rests in the raised position. Fully release the pedal to allow normal ACC operation.

Note: When braking is applied by the ACC system, the vehicle's brake lamps will be switched on, although the brake pedal will not move.

Note: When Intelligent stop/start is fitted, it may operate during a Queue assist stop. Press the accelerator pedal for longer than normal to restart the engine and move off.

DETECTION BEAM ISSUES



E172926

Detection issues can occur:

1. When driving on a different line to the vehicle in front.
2. When a vehicle edges into your lane. The vehicle will only be detected once it has moved fully into your lane.
3. When going into and coming out of a bend.

Adaptive cruise control

4. When moving around a stationary vehicle. This may cause uncertainty as to which vehicle should be followed.
5. When the vehicle ahead turns out of your lane. This may cause uncertainty as to which vehicle should be followed.

In these cases, ACC may brake late or unexpectedly. The driver should stay alert and intervene, if necessary.

ACC MALFUNCTION

If a malfunction occurs during operation of the system in cruise or follow modes, the ACC system will switch off and cannot be used until the fault is cleared. The message **DRIVER INTERVENE** appears briefly and is then replaced by the message **CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE**. If malfunction of the ACC or any related system occurs at any other time, the message **CRUISE NOT AVAILABLE** will be displayed. It will not be possible to activate the ACC system in any mode.

Accumulations of dirt, snow or ice on the sensor or cover may inhibit ACC operation. Fitting of a vehicle front protector or metallised badges may also affect ACC operation.

The ACC system relies on its radar to detect objects and constantly scans ahead. If the radar detects no objects ahead in ACC or **Follow mode**, then the ACC will be deactivated, the audible alarm sounds and the message **DRIVER INTERVENE** displays briefly. The message **ACC SENSOR BLOCKED** will then be displayed.

The same messages may also be displayed while driving on open roads with few objects for the radar to detect.

Clearing the obstruction allows the system to return to normal operation. If the obstruction is present when ACC is inactive (e.g. on initial starting or with the ACC system switched off), the message **ACC SENSOR BLOCKED** will be displayed.

Tyres other than those recommended for your vehicle, may have different sizes. This can affect the correct operation of the ACC.

FORWARD ALERT FUNCTION



The system may not react to slow moving vehicles.

Limited detection and warning of objects ahead, is provided during ACC operation by the ACC **FORWARD ALERT** warning. The enhanced forward alert feature additionally provides warnings when ACC is not engaged; if an object is detected close ahead, then the warning tone and message will be issued. The brakes will not be applied.

The forward alert system does not initiate any action. The driver must take appropriate action when the **FORWARD ALERT** message is displayed. However, the system monitors driver actions (e.g. braking, steering or indicating) and may not initiate the warning display if the appropriate action has been taken early enough.

The Forward alert function may be switched on or off from the **Driving Features** menu in the Instrument panel menu (see **41, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**). When the warning lamp in the Instrument panel illuminates Forward alert is enabled, see **47, FORWARD ALERT (GREEN)**.

The sensitivity of the warning may be changed:

- Press the gap decrease button when ACC is disengaged to display and then decrease the sensitivity of the alert.
- Press the gap increase button to display and then increase the sensitivity of the alert.



Adaptive cruise control

Note: The forward alert set gap is retained when the ignition is switched off.

FORWARD ALERT is displayed in the Message centre.

ADVANCED EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST

- ❗ The system may not react to slow moving vehicles and will not react to stationary vehicles or vehicles travelling in the opposite direction.
- ❗ Warnings may not appear if the distance to the vehicle ahead is very small or if steering wheel or pedal movements are large (e.g. to avoid a collision).
- ❗ The system utilises the same radar sensor as ACC and Forward alert - the same limitations of performance apply.

Advanced emergency brake assist is available at speeds above approximately 7 km/h (5 mph) and improves braking response during emergency braking, when a moving vehicle is detected close ahead.

If the risk of collision increases after the **FORWARD ALERT** warning is displayed, advanced emergency brake assist is activated. The brakes are automatically applied gently in preparation for rapid braking (this may be noticeable). If the brake pedal is then pressed quickly, full braking is implemented, even if only light pressure is applied to the pedal. See **79, EMERGENCY BRAKE ASSIST (EBA)**.

Note: Braking performance will only be improved if the driver applies the brakes.

Advanced emergency brake assist will function even if Forward Alert and ACC are switched off. If there is a fault with the system, **FORWARD ALERT UNAVAILABLE** is displayed in the Message centre. The vehicle can still be driven and the braking system will still operate, but without advanced emergency brake assistance. Consult your Retailer/Authorised Repairer to have the fault rectified.

INTELLIGENT EMERGENCY BRAKING

- ⚠ The Intelligent Emergency Braking (IEB) system may not react to slow moving vehicles.
- ⚠ The system will not react to stationary vehicles or vehicles that are not travelling in the same direction as your vehicle.
- ⚠ Warnings and automatic braking may not occur if the distance to the vehicle ahead is very small, or if the steering wheel and pedal movements are large (e.g., to avoid a collision).
- ⚠ IEB uses the same radar sensor as ACC and Forward alert. The same limitations of performance apply. See **83, ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL OVERVIEW**.

When ACC is fitted, IEB is available at all speeds and will function even if ACC and Forward alert are switched off. The purpose of IEB is to reduce the impact speed with a slower vehicle ahead when a collision becomes unavoidable. IEB can be disabled/enabled via the Instrument panel menus, **Driving Features** and IEB. See **41, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Adaptive cruise control

If an imminent risk of collision occurs, an audible warning is given. If a collision becomes unavoidable, IEB will apply the brakes at up to maximum pressure. After IEB has activated, **IEB System Was Activated** is displayed in the Message centre and the system is inhibited from further operation until reset by a Retailer/ Authorised Repairer.

Note: *The distance required to slow or stop the vehicle is dependent on the condition of the vehicle's tyres and the current road surface.*

If the radar sensor is blocked, by snow or heavy rain, for example, or there is a fault with the system, **IEB Not Available** is displayed in the Message centre. The vehicle can still be driven and the braking system will still operate, but without IEB. If the radar sensor is not considered to be blocked, consult a Retailer/ Authorised Repairer.

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

Driving modes

DRIVING MODES OPERATION

Changing between the driving modes will alter various vehicle settings, for example, engine revs may alter on selection of a different driving mode, while at a constant accelerator pedal position, and steering system feel may also become heavier or lighter. These changes are not dramatic but will be noticeable.



The driving mode button is located in the centre console, close to the gear selector. See **280, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

To change the driving mode:

- Press the driving mode button once - the driving mode icons will appear in the Message centre.
- Within 2 seconds, press the driving mode button until the required driving mode icon is highlighted.
- A message will appear in the Message centre to confirm that the driving mode has been selected, and the icon for the selected driving mode will appear in the right lower corner of the Message centre.

Note: If OFF is selected, a message in the Message centre will confirm that the previous driving mode is switched off, and the icon will be extinguished in the Message centre.

If no driving mode is selected, press the driving mode button once to engage Winter driving mode.

If Winter, or Dynamic, driving mode is selected, press the driving mode button once to switch the driving mode off.

DYNAMIC



The Dynamic driving mode coordinates the vehicle's control systems to help deliver a high performance driving experience, enabling the vehicle's full potential to be exploited. The vehicle's responses are aimed at involving the driver in a more focused and purposeful driving experience.

Note: The Dynamic driving mode cannot be active at the same time as the Winter driving mode. Dynamic driving mode will remain selected for approximately 6 hours after the ignition is switched off, after which point it will need to be re-selected, if required.

Note: During manual gear selection, see **75, MANUAL GEAR SELECTION**, with Dynamic driving mode selected and the transmission in Sport (**S**), the transmission up-shifts are fully controlled by the driver. The transmission will not change up automatically, even when the engine's (revolutions per minute (rpm)) speed limit is reached. A gear shift indicator warning lamp will illuminate briefly, in the Message centre, at the recommended (up-shift) gear change point. See **47, GEAR SHIFT (GREEN)**.

WINTER



The Winter driving mode enhances vehicle stability in low grip conditions. This helps the vehicle to perform in a more gentle and controlled manner, trying to avoid skidding; allowing more confident progress under adverse conditions.

Driving modes

Note: The Winter driving mode cannot be active at the same time as the Dynamic driving mode. The Winter driving mode will remain selected indefinitely, even after the ignition is switched off. The Winter driving mode must be deselected if no longer required.

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

Driving aids

TRAFFIC SIGN RECOGNITION



The Traffic sign recognition system is a driving aid only. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention, in a manner which is safe for the vehicle, its occupants and the other road users. The driver should still observe all other road signs, road markings, and situations that are not detected or recognised by the Traffic sign recognition system.

The Traffic sign recognition system uses the forward-facing camera, located in the base of the rear-view mirror, which detects speed signs, no overtaking signs and variable overhead speed signs, to display symbols of the detected signs in the Message centre. Traffic signs with extra information (for example, reduced speed limits for wet road conditions) will also be detected and compared with the vehicle's systems (for example, rain sensor, wipers, etc.) and may also be displayed in the Message centre. Speed limit information from the Navigation system will be displayed for roads with no signage.

Note: If the Navigation is not available, the Traffic sign recognition system will use the camera only.

Note: Make sure the windscreen area in front of the rear-view mirror is kept clean and free of obstructions, for example, stickers, debris, mud, snow, ice, etc.

The Traffic sign recognition system can be switched on and off via the **Driving Features** menu from the Instrument panel. See **41, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**. The system will operate up to a maximum speed of 250 km/h (155 mph).

The 3 basic functions of the Traffic sign recognition system are as follows:

- Speed limit detection: A corresponding sign will be displayed in the Message centre.

- Speed alert: When the vehicle's speed is greater than (or equal to) the detected speed limit, a flashing Red ring, around the displayed speed limit sign, will be displayed in the Message centre.
Speed alert can be switched on/off, or the settings can be adjusted to display at 3 different settings:
 - When the vehicle's speed equals the detected speed limit.
 - When the vehicle's speed is 5 mph or 10 km/h above the detected speed limit; dependent on the Instrument panel being configured to display in mph or km/h.
 - When the vehicle's speed is 10 mph or 20 km/h above the detected speed limit; dependent on the Instrument panel being configured to display in mph or km/h.
- No overtaking zone: When a no overtaking sign has been detected, the system will also display a corresponding sign in the Message centre.

Note: The Traffic sign recognition system will not detect road markings or situations with no signage, for example, railway crossings, etc.

Traffic sign recognition limitations

The system may provide false information or function incorrectly in the following conditions:

- Travelling in adverse weather conditions, for example, heavy fog, rain, snow, etc.
- Concealed or covered signage.
- Driving towards very bright lights/lamps.
- The windscreen area in front of the camera is covered by a sticker, misted over, dirty, covered in snow or mud, etc.
- Navigation information is incorrect.
- Travelling in an area not covered by the Navigation system.

Driving aids

- Non-conforming road signs.

BLIND SPOT MONITOR

 The Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) system is a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style and use of the exterior and rear-view mirrors. The system may not function under all speeds, weather and road conditions.

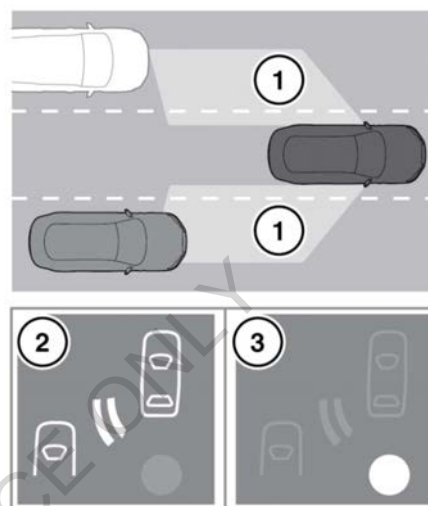
 The BSM may not be able to give adequate warning of vehicles approaching very quickly from behind or vehicles that are being overtaken rapidly.

 The BSM may not be able to detect all vehicles and may also detect objects such as roadside barriers, etc. Drive safely at all times and use the exterior and rear-view mirrors to avoid accidents.

 The radar sensors may be impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow, or road spray. This may affect the system's ability to reliably detect a vehicle/object within the blind spot.

 Make sure the warning indicators in the exterior mirrors are not obscured by stickers or other objects.

 Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper, that may interfere with the radar sensors.



The Blind Spot Monitor (BSM) system monitors a zone that covers the area adjacent to the vehicle, that is not easily visible to the driver. The system uses a radar on each side of the vehicle to identify any overtaking vehicle/object within the blind spot area (1) of the vehicle, while disregarding other objects which may be stationary or travelling in the opposite direction, etc.

If an object is identified by the BSM system as being an overtaking vehicle/object, an amber warning icon (2) illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror, to alert the driver that there is a potential hazard in the vehicle's blind spot and; therefore, that a lane change might be dangerous.

The radar monitors the area extending from the exterior mirror rearwards, to approximately 6 m behind the rear wheels and up to 2.5 m from the side of the vehicle (the width of a typical carriageway lane). The BSM is designed to work most effectively when driving on multi-lane roads.

Driving aids

Note: This radar sensor is approved in all RTTE countries.

Note: The system covers an area of a fixed lane width. If the lanes are narrower than a typical carriageway lane, objects travelling in non-adjacent lanes may be detected.

Note: If rapidly overtaking vehicles are detected on both sides simultaneously, the warning icons in both mirrors will flash.

The BSM automatically switches on and becomes active when the vehicle is travelling at more than 10 km/h (6 mph) in a forward gear. When the system initiates, it performs a self-check, during which the warning icons in the mirrors illuminate alternately for a short period of time.

The indicator dot (3) remains illuminated until the vehicle's forward speed exceeds 10 km/h (6 mph).

The BSM is automatically disabled and an amber warning indicator dot is displayed in the exterior mirrors when:

- Reverse (R) gear is selected.
- Park (P) is selected for vehicles with automatic transmission.
- The vehicle's speed is below 6 km/h (4 mph).
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is applied.

The BSM can be enabled or disabled through the Instrument panel menu. See 41, **INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: Automatic disabling of the BSM does not apply to vehicles with Reverse traffic detection. See 150, **REVERSE TRAFFIC DETECTION**.

CLOSING VEHICLE SENSING



Closing vehicle sensing is a supplement to, not a replacement for, a safe driving style and use of the exterior and rear-view mirrors.



Closing vehicle sensing may not be able to give adequate warning of vehicles approaching very quickly from directly behind the vehicle. Always use the exterior and rear-view mirrors.



The radar sensors may be impaired by mud, rain, frost, ice, snow, or road spray. This may affect the system's ability to reliably detect an approaching vehicle.

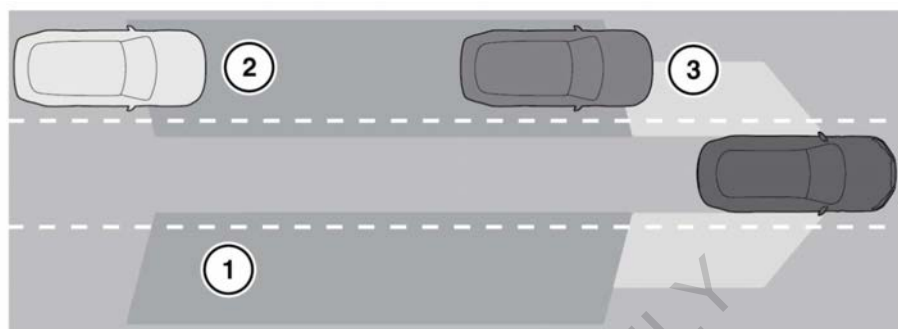


Make sure that the warning indicators in the exterior mirrors are not obscured by stickers or other objects.



Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper, that may interfere with the radar sensors.

Driving aids



E171284

In addition to the functionality provided by the Blind Spot Monitor (BSM), Closing vehicle sensing monitors a larger area behind the vehicle. Closing vehicle sensing is designed to perform best on multi-lane motorways with free-flowing traffic and is operational above 10 km/h (6 mph) in a forward gear.

1. Closing vehicle sensing monitors an area behind the vehicle, up to a distance of 70 m and approximately 2.5 m from each side of the vehicle (the width of a typical carriageway lane).
2. If a vehicle is detected approaching rapidly, an amber warning icon will flash in the relevant exterior mirror to indicate that there is a potential danger.
3. When the detected vehicle reaches the area monitored by the BSM, the amber warning icon will illuminate continuously.

Note: If rapidly overtaking vehicles are detected on both sides simultaneously, the warning icons in both mirrors will flash.

Note: Closing vehicle sensing covers an area of a fixed lane width. If the lanes are narrower than a typical carriageway lane, objects travelling in non-adjacent lanes may be detected.

Note: Closing vehicle sensing is disabled when the vehicle is negotiating a tight radius curve.

Note: When the BSM is disabled, Closing vehicle sensing is also disabled. See **41, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: This radar sensor is approved in all RTTE countries.

BSM SENSORS

The BSM system will automatically disable if either of the sensors become completely obscured; an amber indicator dot (3) is displayed in the exterior mirror and the message **BLIND SPOT MONITOR SENSOR BLOCKED** appears in the Message centre.

Note: Blockage testing is initiated only when the vehicle's speed is above 10 km/h (6 mph) and will take at least 2 minutes of accumulated driving above this speed, to determine that the sensor is blocked.

If the sensors become blocked, check that there is nothing obscuring the rear bumper and that it is clear from ice, frost, and dirt.

If a fault with one of the radar sensors is detected, an amber warning indicator dot is displayed in the exterior mirror and the message **BLIND SPOT MONITOR NOT AVAILABLE** is displayed in the Message centre.



Driving aids

Note: Even if the detected fault affects the radar sensor on only one side of the vehicle, the whole system is disabled. If the fault is temporary, the system will operate correctly once the engine has been switched off and then on again.

If a fault in the system occurs, consult a Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

Progress control system

PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM OVERVIEW

The Progress control system can help the driver to manoeuvre on slippery surfaces. The system operates in either a forward or a reverse direction at low speeds, for example, pulling away from standstill, ascending or descending an incline, and driving on unstable/slippery driving surfaces such as, ice, snow, grass, gravel, sand, mud, etc.

Note: This feature is also known as All Surface Progress Control (ASPC) or All Terrain Progress Control (ATPC).

USING THE PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM



The Progress control button is located on the centre console. See **280, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

Note: The driver's seat belt must be buckled and all of the doors must be completely closed to enable the feature.

Press and release the button, to enable the Progress control system. The button's LED lamp will illuminate, and a warning lamp will also illuminate in the Instrument panel to confirm.

See **46, PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM (AMBER)**.

Press and release the Progress control button again to disable the system. The button's LED lamp and the Progress control warning lamp will extinguish to confirm.

When the ignition is switched off, the Progress control system will be disabled.

When enabled while the vehicle is stationary, the Progress control system will default to a descent control mode. The descent control mode should be used in the event that the vehicle is to make a descent:

- Select the required position for the rotary gear selector.

Note: Any gear selector position can be used, including Neutral (**N**).

- Release the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) or the brake pedal, to allow gravity to make the vehicle progress, up to the minimum feature speed of 3.6 km/h (2.2 mph).
- Progress control will hold this speed, until the system detects the use of the accelerator pedal, brake pedal, or the Cruise control **SET+** button on the steering wheel.

Note: Descent control mode will be resumed after the accelerator pedal, or the brake pedal is released.

Note: Progress control will change to a full function mode, when it detects the use of the Cruise control **SET+** button on the steering wheel. See **98, PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

Full function mode should be used for all other manoeuvres that require the use of Progress control, for example, while making an ascent, or pulling away on level ground, etc.

Note: Full function mode will not operate with the gear selector in the Neutral (**N**) position. In this event, a message will appear in the Message centre.

Note: Press and hold the brake pedal, while using the **SET+** button when the vehicle is stationary.

The Progress control system can also be enabled by pressing and releasing the button while the vehicle is moving, without the need to stop or apply the brake pedal. The current vehicle speed will then be used as the set speed and the Progress control system will then default to the full function mode.



Progress control system

Note: If the vehicle's brakes are firmly applied, during the operation of Progress control, the system will exit the full function mode and will then enter into the descent control mode.

Note: Light and gentle application of the brake pedal, during the operation of Progress control, will lower the target vehicle speed. When the brake pedal is fully released, the Progress control system will maintain the speed at which the brake pedal was released.

Note: The driver can override the Progress control system at any time, with the use of the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal.

Note: If the vehicle's speed exceeds 30 km/h (18.6 mph), the Progress control system will be suspended, and the system will then go into a standby mode, until the vehicle's speed is less than 30 km/h (18.6 mph).

Note: If the vehicle's speed exceeds 80 km/h (50 mph), the Progress control system will be disabled. If required, the system will have to be switched on again, via the Progress control button.

 The driver must maintain full control of the steering and brakes at all times.

When the Progress control system is enabled and the brake pedal is fully released, the system will help to provide controlled and progressive assistance for the vehicle to:

- Pull-away from stationary in a forward or reverse direction on level ground, and uphill or downhill.
- Perform low speed manoeuvring in a forward or reverse direction.
- Make progress and maintain a selected, low target (set) speed, from 3.6 km/h (2.2 mph) up to 30 km/h (18.6 mph).

In the event that the vehicle's brake temperatures exceed the normal operating limits, an ASPC temporarily unavailable warning will be displayed in the Message centre. The Progress control system will then fade-out and become temporarily inactive. Once the brakes have returned to the normal operating temperatures, the message will extinguish and the Progress control system will resume normal operation, if still required.

 Do not attempt a steep descent if the Progress control system is not enabled or the warning message is displayed.

PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM SETTINGS

When the Progress control system is enabled, the desired target (set) speed for the vehicle can be set and adjusted via the Cruise control buttons, mounted on the right side of the steering wheel. See **82, USING CRUISE CONTROL**.

- While the vehicle is moving, press the **SET+** button for the vehicle's current speed to be the set speed. Press repeatedly (or press and hold) to increase the target speed, up to a maximum speed of 30 km/h (18.6 mph).

Note: If the vehicle is at a standstill, then press and hold the brake pedal while using the **SET+** button.

Note: Light and gentle application of the accelerator pedal will temporarily override the current set target speed. When the accelerator pedal is fully released, the Progress control system will revert back to the previously selected target speed.

Note: Dependent on the vehicle's specification, the set speed will either be displayed as a marker on the speedometer, or displayed in the Message centre.

Progress control system

- (-): Press repeatedly (or press and hold) to decrease the desired target vehicle speed, down to a minimum speed of 3.6 km/h (2.2 mph).

Note: *Light and gentle application of the brake pedal will also lower the target vehicle speed. When the brake pedal is fully released, the Progress control system will maintain the speed at which the brake pedal was released. If the brake pedal is pressed when the Progress control system is active, then a slight pulsation movement might be felt through the brake pedal.*

- **CAN:** Press to put the Progress control system into descent control mode. See **97, USING THE PROGRESS CONTROL SYSTEM.**
- **RES:** Press to resume the set speed, if the target vehicle speed has been lowered by gently applying the brake pedal.

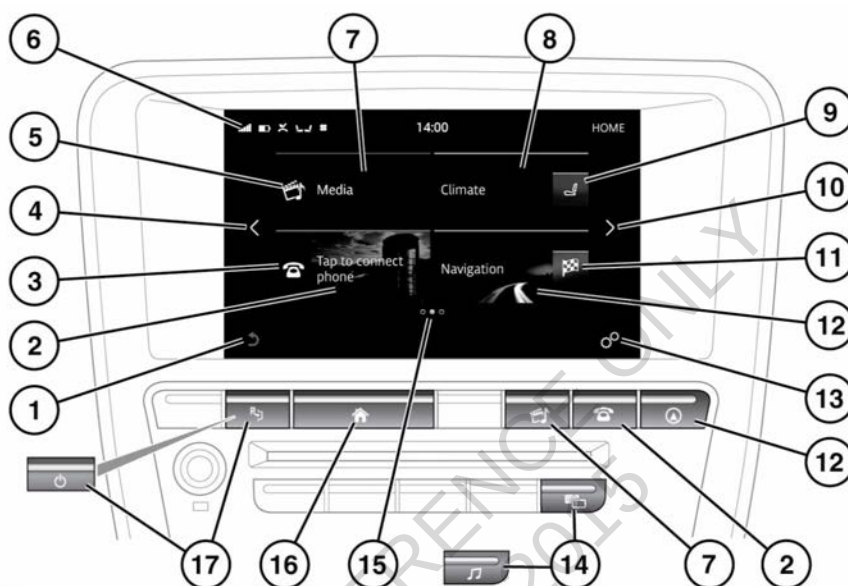


RES should only be used if the driver is aware of the set speed and intends to return to it.

When the vehicle is travelling at speeds between 30km/h (18.6 mph) and 80 km/h (50 mph), the Progress control operation will be suspended and the system will enter into a standby mode, then the Progress control warning lamp will also flash. The Progress control system will resume operation if the vehicle's speed then becomes less than 30 km/h (18.6 mph), but does not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph). If the vehicle's speed does exceed 80 km/h (50 mph), then the Progress control system will be disabled and the warning lamp will extinguish. If required, the system will have to be switched on again.

Touch screen - Home

TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU



E161929



Always run the engine during prolonged use of the Touch screen. Failure to do so may discharge the vehicle's battery; preventing the engine from starting.



Avoid spilling or splashing liquids onto the Touch screen.

1. Touch to return to a higher menu level.

Note: The Return icon will be disabled on the **HOME** screen.

2. Touch the screen or press the button, to select the **PHONE** screen.
3. Touch to select **Voicemail** when a phone is connected, or the **PHONE** screen when no phone is connected.
4. Touch the arrow or swipe the screen to the right, to select the **MY HOME** screens.
5. Touch to select the media shortcut:

- CD, **Bluetooth®** and USB: Alternate between play and pause.

- Radio: Station mute.

Alternatively, touch to switch the Media system off.

6. Status icons. See **101, TOUCH SCREEN STATUS ICONS**.

7. Touch the screen or press the button, to select the media screen. If the Media system is already switched on, then touch to select the current media source menu.

Note: When the system is active, current information for the media being played will be displayed.

8. Touch to select the **FRONT CLIMATE** screen. See **136, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**.

Touch screen - Home

9. Touch to select the **SEAT COMFORT** screen. See **141, HEATED SEATS, 142, CLIMATE SEATS, 142, SEAT MASSAGE**.
10. Touch the arrow or swipe the screen to the left, to select the **EXTRA FEATURES** screens.
11. Touch to set a destination or to cancel guidance if a destination is already set.
12. Touch to select the **NAVIGATION** assistance map.
13. Touch to select **Home Settings**, via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
14. Press to switch **DUAL VIEW** on/off or select the **AUDIO SETTINGS** screen (on non-Dual view vehicles).
15. Indicator for the number of available screens. The solid dot indicates the position of the currently displayed screen.
16. Press to select the **HOME** screen, or double press to select the **PREVIEWS** screen.
17. Press to switch Park Assist on/off or to switch the screen on/off (on vehicles without Park Assist fitted).
For vehicles with Park Assist, the screen can be switched off via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.

TOUCH SCREEN STATUS ICONS

The icons displayed at the top of the screen provide information about the status of the vehicle feature or application.



Phone signal strength indicator.



Phone battery level indicator.



Status of the Heated/Climate seats.



Traffic Alerts.



Wi-Fi signal.



Connecting.



Phone set to divert incoming calls.



Network connection status.

TOUCH SCREEN USE



Do not use excessive pressure when selecting items on the Touch screen.

Definitions for the various button taps and Touch screen gestures used in this handbook:

- Touch: Briefly touch the screen's surface with your fingertip.
- Touch and hold: Touch the screen's surface for an extended period of time.
- Swipe: Move your fingertip over the screen's surface in a fast linear movement.
- Drag: Touch an object and move it with your fingertip over the screen's surface, without losing contact.
- Pinch: Spread two fingers apart on a map or image to zoom in. Pinch to zoom out.

TOUCH SCREEN CARE



Do not use abrasive cleaners on the Touch screen. For approved cleaning products, contact your Retailer/ Authorised Repairer.

Touch screen - My home

MY HOME SCREEN



E166777

The **MY HOME** screen enables the user to display and arrange widgets and shortcuts to applications.

1. **MY HOME** screen: Multiple screens are available.
2. Widgets and shortcuts: These are available in different sizes and can be moved to different locations.
3. Personalised **MY HOME** screen name: Touch to edit.
4. Touch the arrows or swipe the screen to view other **MY HOME** screens, or return to the **HOME** screen.
5. Edit icon: Touch to display edit mode.

EDITING SHORTCUTS, WIDGETS AND SCREENS

Adding a widget: Touch the Edit icon or touch and hold the screen to display edit mode. Next, touch any of the + symbols on the screen and select from the available categories in the footer. Scroll through the gallery of widgets using the direction arrows or by using a swipe action. Touch to select a widget; this will then display on the **MY HOME** screen.

Moving a widget: Touch and hold the screen, then drag the widget to a new location. To move the widget to another **MY HOME** screen, drag it to the side of the screen.

Resizing a widget: When the widget has been selected, moved to a new location, or newly created, a resize toggle will be displayed. Touch the toggle to resize the widget.

Delete a widget: Touch and hold the screen, then drag the widget to the delete bar.

Touch screen - My home

Edit a personalised screen name: Touch the screen name and enter text using the keyboard; touch **OK** to complete.

Moving a screen: Pinch the screen or double press the Home button to display **PREVIEWS** of the **HOME**, **MY HOME** and **EXTRA FEATURES** screens. Touch the preview to display the chosen screen. Touch the Edit icon or touch and hold the screen to display the **EDIT PREVIEWS** screen. Touch and drag the screen preview to the required position.

Adding a screen: While in the **PREVIEWS** screen, touch the Edit icon or touch and hold the screen to display the **EDIT PREVIEWS** screen. Touch the **+** symbol to create a new **MY HOME** screen. When adding or moving a widget, it can be dragged to the left side of the screen; this will then create a new **MY HOME** screen.

Note: A maximum of 4 **MY HOME** screens can be added.

Deleting a screen: While in the **PREVIEWS** screen, touch the Edit icon or touch and hold the screen to display the **EDIT PREVIEWS** screen. Touch and hold the chosen **MY HOME** screen and drag it to the delete bar and release.

Touch screen - Extra features

EXTRA FEATURES

Touch the Extra feature to launch the required application or setting screen:

- **Rear Media:** See **108, REAR MEDIA CONTROL FROM THE TOUCH SCREEN.**
- **Eco Data:** The Eco Data system is designed to help the driver maximise fuel economy by providing vehicle data and driving tips. Real time Eco Data can also be displayed in the Instrument panel.
- **Cameras:** See **153, SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM.**
- **InControl Apps:** See **182, INCONTROL APPS.**
- **Live:** See **182, INCONTROL PRO SERVICES.**
- **Seats:** See **141, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT.**
- **Valet Mode:** See **104, SELECTING VALET MODE.**
- **Contacts:** See **159, CONTACTS.**
- **Voice:** See **175, USING VOICE CONTROL.**
- **Bluetooth:** See **122, PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE MEDIA PLAYER.**
- **Settings:** See **106, GENERAL SETTINGS.**

***Note:** The number of Extra features will vary, depending on the specification of the vehicle.*

SELECTING VALET MODE

Valet mode allows the vehicle to be driven and locked by a parking attendant, without giving access to the luggage compartment and glovebox. Valet mode also prevents operation of the Touch screen, to prevent access to phone numbers or navigation addresses. Only essential driver assist features are available, such as Cameras, Parking Aid, etc.

Valet mode can be activated by using the **Master PIN** (set in Settings) or by using a temporary PIN (if the Master PIN is unknown), to allow someone other than the owner to set Valet mode.

When set with the Master PIN, only the Master PIN can unlock Valet mode. When set with a temporary PIN, the temporary PIN or the Master PIN will unlock Valet mode.

To select Valet mode:

1. Touch **Valet Mode** in the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen.
2. Enter the **Master PIN** or a memorable 4 digit temporary PIN. If using a temporary PIN, you will be prompted to confirm the PIN. If you wish to cancel the PIN, touch the Return icon. If the confirmation PIN is incorrectly entered, you will be prompted to enter the PIN again. See **106, GENERAL SETTINGS.**
3. The **VALET MODE** screen is displayed to indicate that a PIN has been accepted and **Valet Mode** is active.

The luggage compartment and glovebox are now securely locked in Valet mode and the **Valet Mode On** screen is displayed.

DESELECTING VALET MODE

To deselect Valet mode:

1. When you re-enter the vehicle, touch the screen.
2. Enter your Master PIN or temporary PIN (if used to set) and touch **OK.**

Home screen is displayed to indicate that the PIN has been accepted and Valet mode has been deactivated.

- The luggage compartment and glovebox will return to the previously set security requirement.
- The Touch screen will be enabled.

Touch screen - Extra features

Note: If the Master PIN is forgotten, Valet mode can only be deactivated by your Retailer/ Authorised Repairer.

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015



Touch screen - Settings

GENERAL SETTINGS

Touch the Settings icon from any screen, followed by **All Settings** and then **General**.

The **General** settings menu is divided into categories:

- **Time and Date**

***Note:** Setting a year too far in the future could stop certain online apps from working, as the certificate will appear to be invalid.*

- **Display**

- **Screensaver**

- **Master PIN**

***Note:** The default Master PIN is **1926**. This should be changed to your own PIN as soon as possible.*

- **Legal information**

- **Data Collection** (only when set).

Touch to display the list of settings for the required system.

- **Live**
- **Voice**
- **Bluetooth.**

Touch to display the list of settings for the required system.

***Note:** The list will vary, depending on the specification of the vehicle.*

SYSTEM SETTINGS

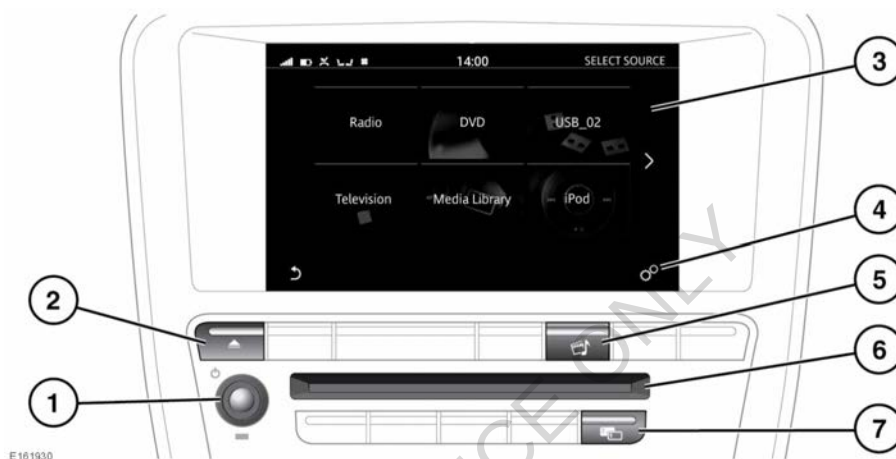
Touch the Settings icon from any screen, followed by **All Settings** and then **Features**.

The **Features** settings menu is divided into categories.

- **Home**
- **Navigation**
- **Media**
- **Phone**
- **Climate**
- **Rear Media**
- **Seats**
- **Connectivity**
- **Cameras**
- **InControl Apps**

Media overview

MEDIA CONTROLS



In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust or view the system when it is safe to do so.



Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

1. On/off and volume control:

- Press to switch the system on/off.
- Rotate to adjust the volume level (displayed on the Touch screen).

Note: The Media system will operate with the ignition on or off, but will always switch off when the ignition is switched off. Switch the system on again, if required.

Note: If the volume is turned to zero while a Compact Disc (CD) is playing, the CD will pause play. Play will resume when a greater volume is selected.

2. CD/DVD eject button.

3. Media source options.

4. Select **Audio Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. See **109, AUDIO SETTINGS**.

5. Press for direct access to the media screen.

6. CD/DVD loading slot: The player will accommodate one disc at a time. Insert a disc into the loading slot until resistance is felt. The player mechanism will complete the loading.

7. Press to select **DUAL VIEW** or the **Audio Settings** menu. See **130, DUAL VIEW CONTROLS** or **109, AUDIO SETTINGS**.

Media overview

REAR MEDIA CONTROL FROM THE TOUCH SCREEN



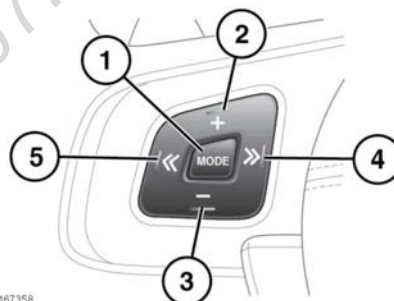
E163107

Touch **Rear Media** on the media screen, to select the **REAR MEDIA** control screen.

1. Touch to select the rear media source.
2. Touch to switch the left-side rear screen on/off.
3. Touch to switch the right-side rear screen on/off.
4. Touch to access the **Rear Media Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
5. Touch to lock or unlock the remote control.
6. Touch to listen to the selected media via the cabin's audio.
7. Forward/Skip for the selected screen.
8. Play/Pause for the selected screen (if applicable to the source selected).
9. Rewind/Skip for the selected screen.

Note: When the main **REAR MEDIA** control screen is displayed on the Touch screen, the remote control will be locked out.

AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS



E167358

1. **MODE:** Short press to scroll through all of the media sources.
2. Press to increase the volume for any source.
3. Press to decrease the volume for any source.
4. Seek up:
Short press:

Media overview

- To select the next radio favourite.
- To select the next track on the chosen media source - CD, MP3, etc.
- When the phone is in use, press to scroll up lists of calls or contact entries.
- To select the next TV channel on the channel list or the next video/DVD chapter.
- Touch **+** or **-** to adjust the **Bass**, **Treble** or **Subwoofer** levels. Alternatively, touch the slider bar and drag or touch anywhere on the bar and release.

To adjust balance and fade:



Touch the arrows to move the sound focal point to the desired area of the vehicle. Alternatively, touch the sound focal point and drag it to the required position or touch anywhere on the vehicle graphic and release.

To adjust surround sound settings:

5. Seek down:
 - Short press:
 - To select the previous radio favourite.
 - To select the previous track or start of the current track on the chosen media source - CD, MP3, etc.
 - When the phone is in use, press to scroll down lists of calls or contact entries.
 - To select the previous TV channel on the channel list or the previous video/DVD chapter.
 - Long press:
 - To auto-seek down the frequency to the next radio station.
 - To rewind the current playing track, video or chapter.

- If **Meridian Surround** or **Meridian Reference** is available, touch **Meridian**, **Dolby Pro Logic IIx** or **DTS Neo:6** to select **Surround sound**. Select **Stereo** to switch **Surround sound** off.

Note: Surround sound options are not available for certain sources where the surround sound mode is set automatically.

AUDIO SETTINGS

To view, touch the Settings icon from any screen and then **Audio Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.

To adjust the sound settings:

LOADING DISCS

- ⚠ To prevent CD mechanism damage, do not insert any object other than a CD/DVD into the disc slot. Objects, such as coins, tickets and cards, will cause a mechanism error and permanent damage to the device.

- ⚠ Do not force the disc into the slot.

Media overview

- ❗ Do not use irregular shaped CDs or DVDs, and those with a scratch protection film or self-adhesive label attached.
- ❗ Do not use mini-sized CDs, even with an adaptor.
- ❗ Recordable (CD-R) discs and re-writable (CD-RW) discs may not function correctly.
- ❗ Recordable (DVD-R or DVD+R) discs may not function correctly.
- ❗ Dual-format and dual-sided discs (DVD Plus, CD-DVD format) are thicker than normal CDs and so playback cannot be guaranteed and jamming may occur.

Only use an approved CD cleaning kit.

Only use high quality 12 cm circular discs.

The player will accommodate one CD or DVD disc at a time.

When a CD is loaded, the ripping media option is available. Select **Media Settings**, via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.

CONVERSATION ASSIST

Conversation assist uses the vehicle's audio system and the front and rear microphones to enhance the conversation over the vehicle's interior noise.

The Conversation assist controls are located in the **VOLUME SETTINGS** screen.

Select **All Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu, and then **Features**. Next select **Media**, followed by **Volume Settings**. See **106, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

Conversation assist offers 3 options:

- **Off**: Touch to switch the system off.
- **Normal**: Touch to select normal volume.
- **High**: Touch to select high volume.

When active, front passenger voices are reproduced through the rear speakers and rear passengers voices are reproduced through the front speakers. The system is disabled when at a standstill and progressively increases with vehicle speed and background noise.

Note: *The system is disabled when at a standstill, during phone calls, or at higher volumes, for example, when loud music is playing.*

GRACENOTE® END USER LICENSING AGREEMENT

Gracenote Terms of Use

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to do disc or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

This application or device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

Media overview

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licence to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licence terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote **Privacy Policy** for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© 2013. Gracenote, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Media overview

LICENSING



E135227



E145346



E132539

Manufactured under licence from Dolby Laboratories.

Dolby, Pro Logic, and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.



E132540

Manufactured under licence, under U.S. Patent #'s: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535; 7,003,467 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS, the Symbol, and Neo:6 are registered trademarks, & DTS Digital Surround and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



E132541



E132542

Manufactured under licence, under U.S. Patent #'s: 5,451,942; 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 5,978,762; 6,487,535 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending. DTS and the Symbol are registered trademarks, & DTS 2.0+ Digital Out and the DTS logos are trademarks of DTS, Inc. Product includes software. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.



E132544

Music and video recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information, please visit www.gracenote.com.

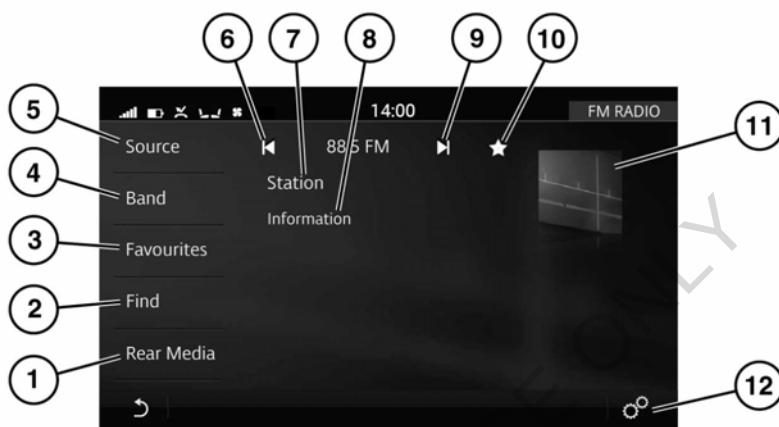
Media overview

CD, DVD, Blu-ray Disc, and music and video-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDb, MusicID, MediaVOCs, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

AM/FM Radio

AM/FM RADIO CONTROLS



E162076



In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.



Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

1. **Rear Media:** Select for rear media options.
2. **Find:** Touch to display options for finding a required station, frequency or genre.
 - **STATION LIST:** Touch the Station list icon to display a list of available stations on the selected waveband.
 - **FREQUENCY INPUT:** Touch the Frequency input icon to display the keypad. Enter the required frequency and touch **OK**.
 - **GENRE:** Touch the Genre icon to display a list of available genres. Select the required genre from the list.

3. **Favourites:** Touch to display a single list of **AM**, **FM** and **DAB** favourite stations. Touch the star to remove the selected station from the Favourites list. Touch the station frequency or name to select that station and play it.

To rearrange the order of the list, touch the Edit icon. Drag and drop selected items, to the desired position. Touch **OK** to confirm.

4. **Band:** Touch to view and select a radio band; **AM**, **FM** or **DAB**. The radio will tune to the last used station on that radio band.
5. **Source:** Touch to display all media sources.
6. Seek down:
 - Touch or swipe the Touch screen from left to right, to seek down to the next radio station.
 - Touch and hold to activate continuous seek mode.
7. Displays information about the current station.

AM/FM Radio

Touch anywhere on the channel's name or number to view the frequency Input keypad. Enter the required frequency and touch **OK**.

Note: The keypad will only allow the input of possible frequencies valid for the vehicle's market.

8. Displays information from the broadcasting station. Touch to view further information (if available); touch again to close the further information display.
9. Seek up:
 - Touch or swipe the Touch screen from right to left, to seek up to the next radio station.
 - Touch and hold to activate continuous seek mode.
10. Touch the Favourite icon to add to or delete from the **Favourites** list. This will be highlighted when the tuned station is set as a favourite.
11. Touch to view further information; touch again to close the further information display.
12. Select **AM/FM Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Touch to activate/deactivate the following features: **RDS**, **Traffic**, **News**, **Station list order**, **AF** and **REG**. See 115, **RADIO DATA SYSTEM (RDS)**.

Note: The Media system provides a 2-channel radio, enabling occupants to listen to 2 different radio stations at the same time (not available in all markets).

Note: Electronic devices used within, connected to, or within close proximity to the vehicle, may affect the performance of this system (e.g., radio reception, etc.).

RADIO DATA SYSTEM (RDS)

Your radio is equipped with an RDS, which enables the Media system to receive additional information with normal FM radio signals.

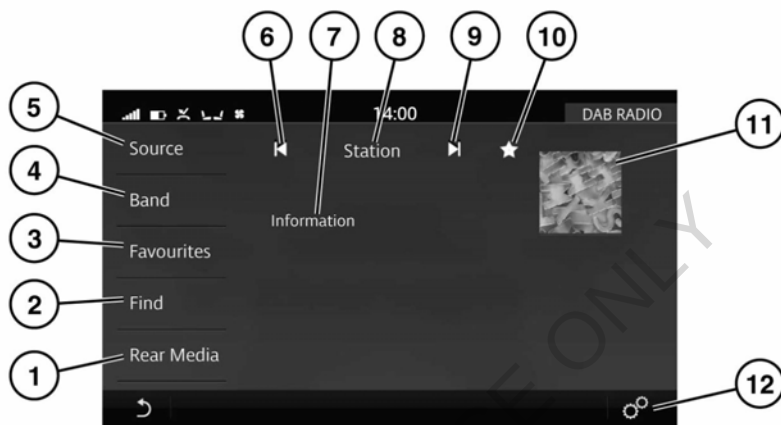
Note: Not all FM radio stations broadcast RDS information.

Select **AM/FM Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu, to view or alter the **RDS** settings.

- **RDS:** Select **ON** or **OFF**.
- **Traffic Alerts (TA):** Provides local travel information.
- **News:** Provides news information.
- **Station list order:** List stations by **Name** or **Frequency**.
- **Alternative Frequency (AF):** Select to allow the radio to automatically retune to a stronger AF for the current station. This is useful on a journey where the vehicle travels through different transmitter areas.
- **Regionalisation:** When **ON** it allows an Alternative Frequency (AF) switch to local services that have similar, but not identical content.
When **OFF**, it restricts AF switching to alternative services with identical, content only.

DAB radio

DAB RADIO CONTROLS



E162127



In the interest of safety, only operate or adjust the system when it is safe to do so.



Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

1. **Rear Media:** Select for rear media options.
2. **Find:** Touch to display options for finding a required station.
 - **DAB STATION LIST:** Touch to view a list of available channels. The list is arranged in alphabetical order; select the up or down arrows to scroll through the list.
 - **DAB GENRE:** Touch to list available genres. These are channels grouped into categories (**Pop Music**, **Travel**, etc.).
 - **SEARCH:** Touch to search using the keypad. Enter the required channel and select **OK**.

3. **Favourites:** Touch to display a single list of **AM**, **FM** and **DAB** favourite stations. To rearrange the order of the list, touch the Edit icon. Drag and drop selected items, to the desired position. Press **OK** to confirm.
4. **Band:** Touch to view and select a radio band; **AM**, **FM** or **DAB**. The radio will tune to the last used station on that radio band.
5. **Source:** Touch to display all media options.
6. Seek down:
 - Short touch or swipe the Touch screen from left to right, to select the previous channel.
7. Display showing the current channel/frequency (FM).
8. Channel information: Touch to view DAB text.
9. Seek up:
 - Short touch or swipe the Touch screen from right to left, to select the next channel.

DAB radio

10. Touch the Favourite icon to add to or delete from **RADIO FAVOURITES**. This will be highlighted when a tuned station is set as a favourite.
 11. Artist or station text/graphic displayed. If unavailable, a generic graphic is displayed. Touch to view further information; touch again to close the further information display.
 12. Select **DAB Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Touch to manage the following features: **Link to FM Stations**, **Frequency Band** and **Announcements**. See **117, DAB RADIO SETTINGS**.
- Select **Announcements**, (Traffic, News, etc.) from the list. The selected announcements will interrupt the current programme, when broadcast.

***Note:** The Media system provides a 2-channel radio, enabling occupants to listen to 2 different radio stations at the same time (not available in all markets).*

***Note:** Electronic devices used within, connected to, or within close proximity to the vehicle, may affect the performance of this system (e.g., radio reception, etc.).*

DAB RADIO SETTINGS

In **DAB Settings**:

- If the **Link to FM Stations** setting is switched on and the signal strength for a channel falls below an acceptable level, the Media system will automatically switch to the FM version of this station (only when available).
- Choose **Frequency Band** if moving to a region that uses a different digital band. Available formats are:
 - Band 3.
 - Band L.
 - Band 3 & Band L.
 - Band 3 China.
 - Band 3 China & Band L.

Portable media

PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS

Portable media devices can be connected to the media hub located in the cubby box. Rear seat passengers can connect at the rear of the centre console. Optical discs can be inserted into the CD/DVD drive located in the centre console.

Compatible portable devices include:

- USB mass storage devices (e.g., a memory stick). Devices must use FAT or FAT32.

Note: External hard drives are not recommended to be left in the vehicle for extended periods, as it could reduce the life of the device.

- Optical media (Album CDs or DVDs).
- iPod (iPad, iPod Touch, iPhone, iPod Nano and iPod Classic Gen4, Gen5, Gen6 are supported - full functionality for older devices cannot be guaranteed). iPod Classic Gen1, Gen2, Gen3 and iPod Shuffle are not supported.
- Media devices that support HDMI or MHL.

If you are connecting an iPod, mass storage or **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device, use the Touch screen to operate and search the device. Many of the controls are similar to those available for CD playback.

 Please disconnect your iPod when leaving the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in the iPod battery discharging.

Note: The Media system will play MP3, WMA, WAV, AIFF, M4A, FLAC, AAC, AMR, LPCM and ALAC files. Other formats are available.

To maximise playback quality, it is recommended that lossless compression is used for any media files on USB. Failing this, it is recommended that compressed files utilise a minimum bitrate of 192 kb/s (a higher bitrate is strongly recommended).

Note: iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries.

Note: Some MP3 players have their own file system that is not supported by this system. To use your MP3 player, you must set it to **USB Removable Device** or **Mass Storage Device** mode.

For a list of compatible **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices, please refer to the Jaguar website at www.jaguar.com.

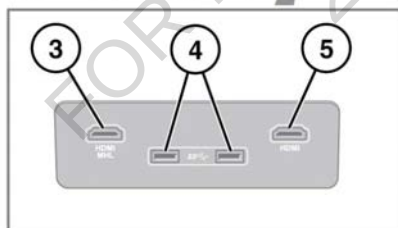
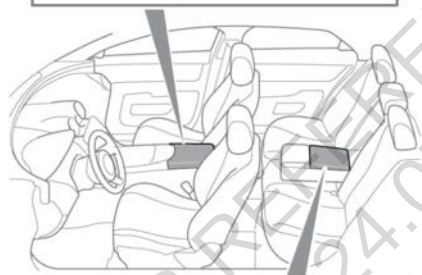
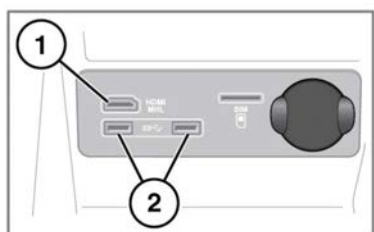
The **Bluetooth** wireless technology devices listed have been tested for compatibility with Jaguar vehicles. Performance will vary, based on the device's software version and battery condition. Devices are warranted by their manufacturer, not Jaguar.

Portable media

CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE



Read the manufacturer's instructions for any device, before it is connected to the Media system. Make sure that the device is suitable, and comply with any instructions regarding connection and operation. Failure to do so may result in damage to the vehicle's Media system or the media device.



E171144

Connect the device into the appropriate socket:

1. HDMI/MHL socket.
2. USB sockets.
3. Rear media HDMI/MHL socket.
4. Rear media USB sockets.

5. Rear media HDMI socket.

Note: On vehicles fitted with Executive class rear seats, the Rear media connection sockets are located in the rear storage compartment in the centre armrest. See **63, STORAGE COMPARTMENTS**.

Note: Use the cable supplied with your media device to connect to the USB socket.

Note: High quality cables are recommended to be used with Apple devices as this will enhance operation.

Note: A USB hub cannot be used to connect more than one USB device to the audio unit.

Note: Devices connected to the USB ports will be charged, but devices that are fully discharged will not play.

Higher-rated devices that require more than 7.5W to charge may not display an indicator when charging; these devices will still charge without this indicator being displayed.

Note: HDMI devices are not charged.

Note: Apple devices should be updated to the latest iOS version, otherwise, full support cannot be guaranteed.

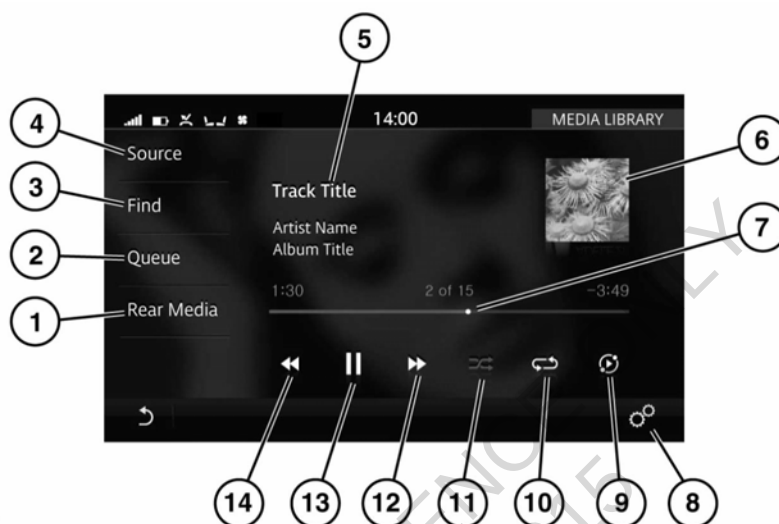
Note: Voice command support can only be guaranteed for newer Apple devices, i.e., devices that use the lightning connector.

Note: Options, such as **Repeat** and **Shuffle**, relate to the device currently playing; they will not apply to any subsequent device. Previous **Repeat** and **Shuffle** selections will be deactivated when a new queue has been created.

Note: The available sockets vary, according to vehicle specification.

Portable media

PORTABLE MEDIA CONTROLS



E162145



Do not adjust the main audio unit's controls, or allow the system to distract the driver while the vehicle is moving. Driver distraction can lead to accidents, causing serious injury or death.



Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

See **107, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

Portable media includes **Media Library** (internal storage), CD, iPods, iPads, iPhones, USB mass storage, HDMI/MHL and **Bluetooth®** wireless technology devices.

1. Rear media: Select for Rear media options.

2. Queue: Opens the current queue of tracks selected from the portable media devices (if supported). To add a track, album, artist or genre to the queue, touch and hold the respective item at any time, and an information banner will give further instructions.

Note: Selecting a track, album, artist or genre not currently in the queue to play will cause the current queue to be erased.

3. Find: Select the Artist, Album or Song icon to display results in alphabetical order. Select the More icon to display a list of further available options (**Playlists, Genres, Most played, Videos, Folder Browse** etc.).

- Select **Folder Browse** to view the contents of the connected device, which are displayed as dictated by the file structure.

Portable media

- Select a file to start playback. Select a folder or subfolder to view their contents.
 - To return to the **MEDIA LIBRARY** screen, touch the Return icon.
- 4. Source:** Displays all Media sources.
- The list of media devices will be dynamically populated based on whether they are connected.
- Note:** Sound quality and volume levels available from connected media devices may vary widely.
- 5.** Displays information about the current track. Touch the displayed text to view a list of the tracks in album. Touch again to return to the current track information display.
- Note:** Only connected devices that support ID3 Tags shall have the information displayed. Information is also displayed in the Instrument panel.
- 6.** Album artwork/graphic display. If unavailable, a generic graphic is displayed. Touch to view the list of tracks on the album, the queue list or information for the current track, touch again to revert back or press the Return icon.
- Note:** ID3 Tag information displayed.
- 7.** Interactive time progress bar: Touch or drag to move forward/back through the current track.
- 8.** Select **Media Player Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu, to manage the vehicle's memory (import and delete files) and change the CD rip settings.
- 9.** More like this icon: Select to automatically generate a smart playlist based on similar tracks. Touch, at any time, to create a new list based on the track currently being played.

Note: Loading time is dependent on content type.

Note: When a CD is selected, the More like this icon is replaced by a Rip icon. Notification will be displayed when ripping of the CD is complete.

- 10. Repeat:** Touch to repeat the current track continuously; the Repeat icon will be highlighted when active. Touch again to cancel.
- 11. Shuffle:** Touch to shuffle the current music queue continuously; the Shuffle icon will be highlighted when active. Touch again to cancel.
- 12. Skip/Scan forward:**
- Touch and release to skip forward to the next track.
 - Touch and hold to scan forwards through the current track. Play will resume when released.
 - Swipe the Touch screen from right to left to skip to the next track.
- 13. Pause/Play:** Select to pause playback. Select again to resume playback.
- 14. Skip/Scan backward:**
- Touch and release to skip back to the previous track.
 - Touch and hold to scan backwards through the current track. Playback will resume when released.
 - Swipe the Touch screen from left to right to skip to the previous track.

PLAYING A PORTABLE DEVICE

If you are using a USB mass storage device or compatible Apple device, you can control playback using the Touch screen controls.

Portable media

If you are using a **Bluetooth®** wireless technology device, you can control playback using the Touch screen, but some controls may be unavailable.

If you are using any media device via the HDMI/MHL socket, then you must control playback from the device itself.



It is recommend not to use a Hard Disc Drive via the USB link while the vehicle is in motion. These devices are not designed for in-car use and may be damaged.

CONNECTING MULTIPLE DEVICES

You can connect multiple devices simultaneously to the portable media interface and switch between them using the Touch screen. Select **iPod**, **USB**, **Bluetooth** or **HDMI/HML**, to switch between inputs.

If, after changing to the newly-docked device, you change back to the first device, playback will resume at the point you left it (USB and iPod only).

See **119, CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE**.

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE MEDIA PLAYER

Note: The process of pairing and connecting your media device with the vehicle, using the media device, will vary depending on the type of media device.

1. Switch on the ignition and make sure that the Touch screen is active.
2. From the media screen, select **All Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Next select **Features**, followed by **Bluetooth**.
3. The **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen will be displayed; select **Pair New Device**.

4. The vehicle's **Bluetooth** wireless technology system will remain discoverable while in the pairing screen.

5. Using the media device, search for devices. On some media devices, this is referred to as a new paired device. See your device's operating instructions for further information.

The vehicle's default discoverable name is **Jaguar XJ**.

6. When the vehicle's discoverable name is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions.
Select **Yes** when prompted, to confirm the pairing. On some media devices, this will complete the pairing.
Alternatively, on other media devices, the vehicle's system will display a PIN (Personal Identification Number). When prompted, either enter the PIN on your device, or select **Yes**, to confirm that the PIN displayed, matches the vehicle's PIN.

7. Once your media device is paired and connected to the system, a confirmation message will be displayed. Either, select the Return icon or return to the previously selected media, and then select **Source**.

8. Select your media device from the displayed media options.

Note: If, when playing media through a wireless connected Apple device, the Apple device is then also connected to a USB port, the wireless connection will become disabled. To reconnect via wireless, the USB connection will need to be disconnected and the Apple device reconnected via the **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen.

Note: It can take a considerable amount of time to sync an Apple device with a large quantity of media on it. During this time, playback can only be accessed from the Apple device's media player and not via voice commands.

Portable media

Note: After the Apple device has been synced with the Media system, the device can then be controlled via the Media system or operated by the Voice system. If the Apple device's track list is updated after the device was previously synced, the device will need to be re-synced to the Media system. During this time, the Apple device's voice commands will become temporarily unavailable.

For further information on **Bluetooth®** wireless technology, see **161, BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION**.

CHANGING/DISCONNECTING A DEVICE

To connect/disconnect a paired **Bluetooth®** device:

1. Touch the Settings icon to select **All Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Next select **Features**, followed by **Bluetooth**.
2. The **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen will be displayed; select **Paired Devices**.
3. Paired devices will be listed; select **Connect** or **Disconnect**.

To unpair a paired **Bluetooth** device:

1. Select **All Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Next select **Features**, followed by **Bluetooth**.
2. The **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen will be displayed; select **Paired Devices**.
3. Paired devices will be listed; select the device's name followed by **Forget Device**.

To forget all paired **Bluetooth** devices:

1. Select **All Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Next select **Features**, followed by **Bluetooth**.
2. The **BLUETOOTH SETTINGS** screen will be displayed; select **Forget All Devices**.

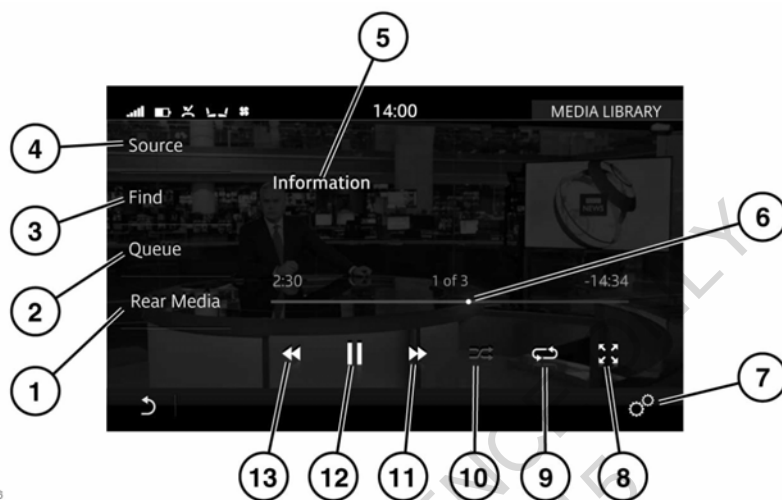
IMPORTING/RIPPING MEDIA

The vehicle's internal storage, which is used for navigation data, speech data and metadata databases, will also allow media to be stored by:

- Importing media from USB memory devices (via the **MEDIA PLAYER SETTINGS** screen).
- Ripping media from CDs.

Portable media

VIDEO MEDIA PLAYER CONTROLS



E162516



In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust or view the system when it is safe to do so.



Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

Note: The system will play MPEG1, MPEG2, WMV9, VC-1, H.264, H.263, MPEG4 ASP, RAW, VP6 and VP8 files.

Note: To maximise the playback quality, it is recommended not to playback video files with a resolution greater than 1 080p.

Note: The quality of video playback may be affected by the USB 3 memory device's speed.

1. **Rear Media:** Select for rear media options.
2. **Queue:** Opens the current queue of videos selected from the relevant device.
3. **Find:** Touch the More icon to search, or select from the list of videos. These are displayed in alphabetical order.
4. **Source:** Touch to display all media sources.

Note: The media sources (e.g., DVD or USB 3 memory devices) will be displayed, only if they are inserted or connected.

5. Touch to select full screen mode or wait for the preview screen to time out. Touch the screen again to view the controls at any time.
6. Interactive time progress bar: Touch or drag to move forward/back through the current video track.
7. Select **Media Player Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
8. Zoom: Select to zoom in/out between the 2 available options.
9. Repeat: Touch to repeat the current video continuously. The Repeat icon will be highlighted when active. Touch again to cancel.
10. Shuffle: Touch to shuffle the current video queue. The Shuffle icon will be highlighted when active. Touch again to cancel.

Portable media

11. Skip/Scan forward:

- Touch and release to skip forward to the next video track.
- Touch and hold to scan forwards through the current video track. Playback will resume when released.
- Swipe the Touch screen from right, to left to skip to the next video track.

12. Select to Pause/Play: Select to pause playback. Select again to resume playback. A second touch will stop and reset the video.

13. Skip/Scan backward:

- Touch and release to skip backward to the previous video track.
- Touch and hold to scan backwards through the current video track. Playback will resume when released.
- Swipe the Touch screen from left to right, to skip to the previous video track.

VIDEO MEDIA INHIBIT WITH VEHICLE MOVING

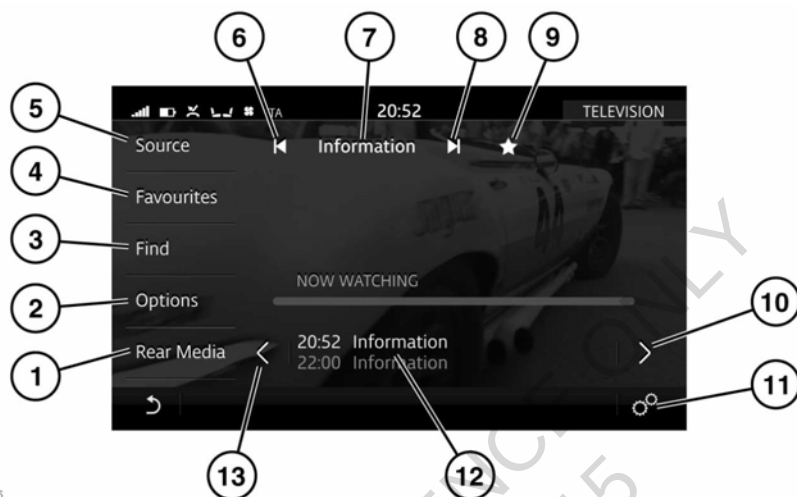
When the vehicle is moving, the video picture will automatically be inhibited. A relevant safety message will be displayed on the Touch screen. If Dual view is fitted, a prompt for the passenger to activate Dual view is displayed. See **130, DUAL VIEW**.

FULL SCREEN VIEW

When full screen mode is selected, the seek controls operate in the same manner as they do in preview mode.

Television

TELEVISION CONTROLS



E162515



In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust or view the system when it is safe to do so.



Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

Note: While Jaguar continue to work closely with its partners to develop TV standards worldwide, we cannot guarantee the TV feature in all countries at all times.

1. Rear Media: Select for rear media options.

2. Options: Touch to display various TV options.

- Touch the Zoom icon to zoom in from 16:9/4:3 to fit screen. Touch again to zoom out.
- Touch the Audio icon to access available alternative audio tracks for the current broadcast.

- Touch the Video icon to access available alternative video feeds for the current broadcast.

3. Find: Touch to display options for finding a TV channel/programme.

- **CHANNEL LIST:** Touch the icon to view a list of available channels. Select the up or down arrows to scroll through the list or swipe the Touch screen up or down. Touch the name of the channel to tune to and view that channel.

- **WHAT'S ON:** Touch the icon to view the Electronic Programme Guide (EPG).

To set a programme reminder: Select a programme that is currently not broadcasting, to display a summary page. Select **Set Reminder**. Once set, an icon will display in the EPG. Only 4 reminders can be set for the same time.

Television

To view a programme currently being broadcast, select the required programme to display a summary page. Select **View Now** to tune to that channel. The selected programme displays in full screen view.

***Note:** The TV system is continually checking the availability of channels. It is possible for a channel to be in the list, but not actually available (e.g., when driving through different transmitter regions).*

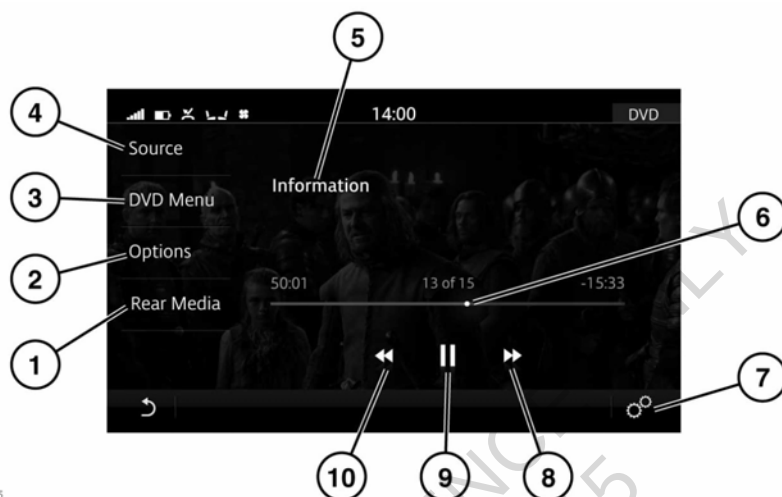
4. **Favourites:** Touch to display a single list of favourite stations. To rearrange the order of the list, touch the Edit icon in the footer. Drag and drop selected items to the desired position. Press **OK** to confirm.
5. **Source:** Touch to display all radio and media options.
6. **Seek down:** Touch or swipe the Touch screen from left to right, to tune to and view the previous channel in the TV channel list.
7. Current channel and programme title display.
8. **Seek up:** Touch or swipe the Touch screen from right to left, to tune to and view the next channel in the TV channel list.
9. Touch to add/delete from the **Favourites** list.
10. Touch to browse to the next TV programme. Touch the programme banner to tune to the browsed channel.
11. Select **TV Settings** via the **Settings** pop-up menu. Select for **Traffic Alerts (TA)**, **News**, **Parental Lock**, **BCAS Serial Number**, **Channel Lock**, **Genre Lock**, and **Rating Lock**.
12. Displays the current TV programme playing and what's playing next.

13. Touch to browse to the previous TV programme. Touch the programme banner to tune to the browsed channel.

For information on the use of the audio/video controls on the audio unit and steering wheel, see **107, MEDIA CONTROLS**.

DVD player

DVD PLAYER CONTROLS



E167115



In the interest of safety, only operate, adjust or view the system when it is safe to do so.



Sustained exposure to high sound levels (greater than 85 decibels) can damage your hearing.

1. **Rear Media:** Select for rear media options.
2. **Options:** Touch to access **Zoom In/Out**, **Audio**, **Angle** and **Subtitle** options.
Note: The options displayed are dependent on the inserted DVD options.
3. **DVD Menu:** Touch to access the DVD menu.
 - **Top Menu:** Only displayed if supported by the DVD.
 - **Resume:** Touch to resume play.
 - **Menu navigation keys:** Touch to move the menu up or down.

Note: The DVD menu can also be selected by touching the screen in full screen mode.

4. **Source:** Touch to display all media options.

5. **DVD information:** Touch to select full screen mode.
Touch the screen again to view the controls at any time. Alternatively, swipe the Touch screen, to seek the previous/next chapter.
6. **Interactive time progress bar:** Touch or drag to move forward/back through the current DVD.
7. **Select DVD Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Touch to activate/deactivate the following features: **Traffic** and **News**.
8. **Seek up:** Touch to view the next DVD chapter; touch and hold to fast forward.
9. **Pause/Play:** Touch to pause playback. Touch again to resume playback.
10. **Seek down:** Touch to view the previous DVD chapter; touch and hold to rewind.

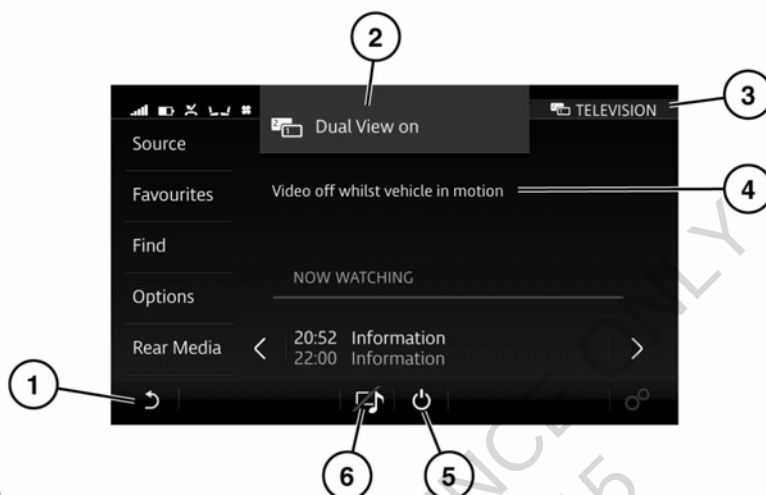
DVD player

For information on the CD/DVD loading slot and eject button, and the use of the media controls on the Media system and steering wheel, see **107, MEDIA CONTROLS**, **108, AUDIO STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS**, and **109, LOADING DISCS**.

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

Dual view

DUAL VIEW CONTROLS



E163199

1. Touch the Return icon to show media in full view screen for the passenger, and return the driver to their previous screen.
2. The information banner is momentarily displayed when Dual view is switched on.
3. Indicates the screen being operated for the passenger.
4. When the vehicle is being driven, moving images will be inhibited from the driver's view and a relevant safety message will be displayed.
Note: Moving images will be reactivated when the vehicle is stationary.
5. Touch to switch off Dual view mode.
Note: Alternatively, long press the Dual view button to switch off.
6. Touch this icon, if the passenger wants to listen to the selected Dual view source (e.g., Media player), while viewing the same screen as the driver (e.g., Navigation).

Note: If the Dual view controls are not used for over 10 seconds, the display will revert to full screen view. Press the Dual view button again to view the controls.

DUAL VIEW

Dual view allows the front passenger to view or listen to media, while the driver is using an alternative system (e.g., Radio or Navigation).



1. While in the selected screen (e.g., Navigation) press the Dual view button (located below the Touch screen).
2. The **SELECT SOURCE** screen will be displayed. Select the chosen media source (e.g., Media player). This will be displayed, along with the Dual view controls in the footer.

Dual view

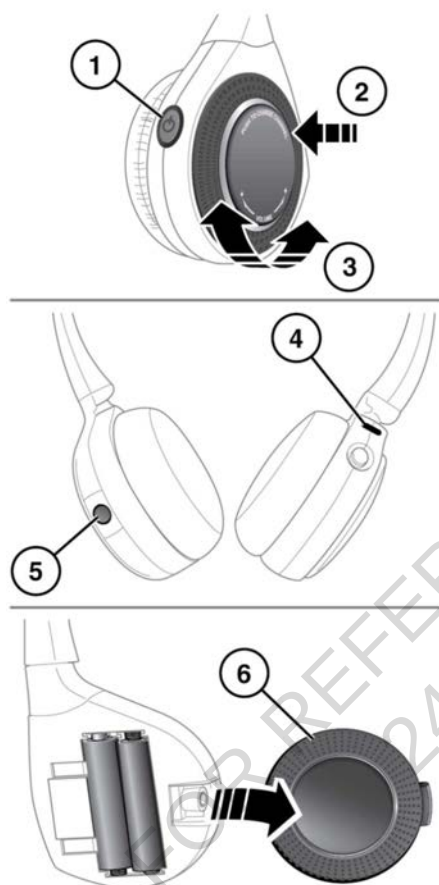
3. After the passenger has selected the media source and completed the required changes, the Return icon should be selected to give the drivers view back, leaving the passenger to view their selected source.
4. If the passenger wants to take control of the Touch screen, the Dual view button should be pressed. This will take both the passenger and the driver back to the selected media source and display the Dual view controls in the footer. To return to Dual view, touch the Return icon or press the Dual view button.

Note: The Dual view controls will also be displayed on the driver's view.

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

Headphones

HEADPHONES



E170640

1. Press to switch the headphones on/off.
2. Press to change the audio channel.
3. Rotate to adjust the headphone volume.
4. The status LED indicator lamp:
 - When a signal is being received, the lamp will illuminate continuously.
 - When a signal is not being received, the lamp will flash.

- When the battery power is low, the lamp will flash and then go out after a short delay.

5. The battery cover retaining screw.

6. The battery access cover.

When the battery power is low, the headphones will emit a beeping sound every 90 seconds.

To replace the batteries, use the following the procedure:

1. Remove the battery access cover retaining screw (5).

2. Pull the cover (6) away from the headphones.

3. Install the new AAA batteries.

Note: Make sure that the polarity of the batteries matches that shown inside the headphone's battery compartment.

4. Replace the battery access cover.

Note: The headphones will not operate if the batteries are fitted incorrectly.

Note: Under normal usage, the expected battery life is 6 months.

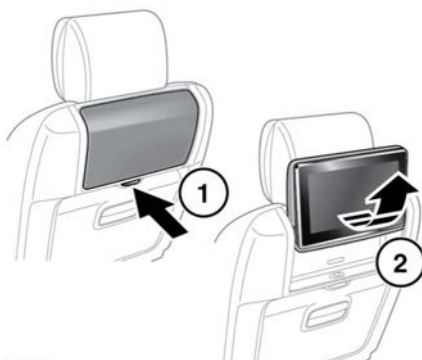
Note: Always use good quality batteries of the same type.



Used batteries must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on battery disposal from a Retailer/Authorised Repairer and/or the local authority.

Rear seat screens

DEPLOYING THE REAR SEAT SCREENS



E172540

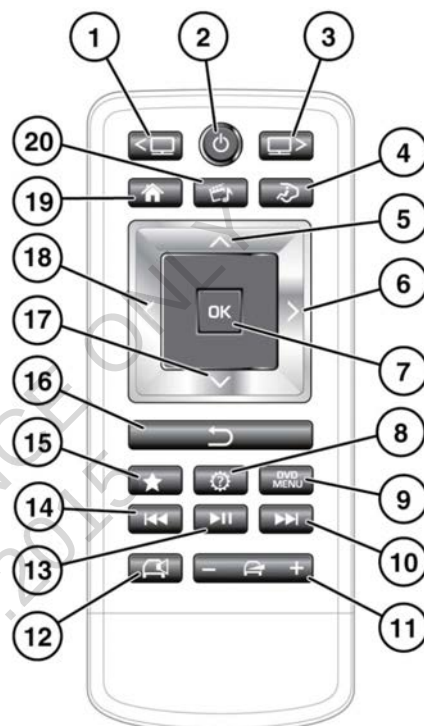
1. Push the release latch inwards at the bottom of the screen.
2. Pull the underneath edge of the screen to deploy to the open position.

When the display is fully open, the angle can be adjusted by pulling it towards the rear of the vehicle.

Note: Care should be taken not to force the display beyond the fully open position.

When folded beyond the horizontal position, the display will switch off in preparation for being stored away. Opening the display, or pushing it back into the open position, will automatically switch it back on.

REAR SEAT REMOTE CONTROL



E163203

1. Left screen select, or reactivate the screen when in standby mode (illuminates when selected).
2. Press and release to switch the selected screen on/off (all selected audio from sources will continue). Press and hold to switch off the system completely (audio and video source will stop).
3. Right screen select, or reactivate the screen when in standby mode (illuminates when selected).
4. Press to toggle between the **CLIMATE** and **SEATS** screens.

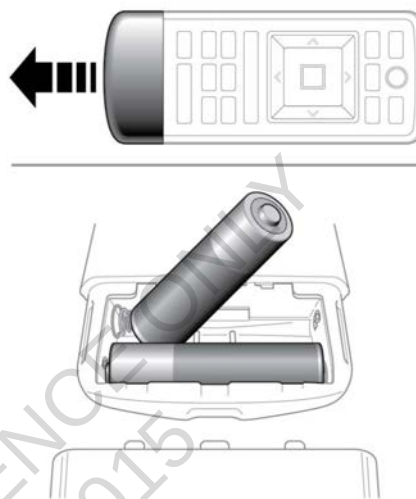
Rear seat screens

5. Cursor control: Up*.
6. Cursor control: Right*.
7. **OK**: Press to confirm selection.
8. Settings: Some settings for features displayed on the Rear seat screens are available, however, full functionality is controlled from the front Touch screen.
9. DVD menu.
10. Next track/file/channel/station.
11. Cabin audio volume increase/decrease/mute (volume control for the headphones is on the side of the headphones).
12. Cabin audio on/off (when switched off, the headphone's audio will be available).
13. Play/Pause.
14. Previous track/file/channel/station.
15. Mark selection as a favourite.
16. Press to return to a higher menu level.
17. Cursor control: Down*.
18. Cursor control: Left*.
19. Shortcut to the rear **HOME** screen.
20. Press once to view the selected media source. Press again to access the **SELECT SOURCE** menu.

*These are multi-function keys depending on the source selected.

If the remote control becomes unpaired from the rear screens, re-pair via the **Rear Media Settings**, on the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Once this is complete, both the Left and Right screen buttons will flash twice. See **106, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

REAR SEAT REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY



Low battery power is indicated by the remote control power button flashing 3 times when pressed.

To renew the batteries:

- Remove the chrome battery cover.
- Install 2 AAA batteries. Make sure the polarity of the batteries matches that shown inside the remote control battery compartment.

Note: The remote control will not operate if the batteries are fitted incorrectly.

Note: Always use good quality batteries of the same type.

- Replace the chrome battery cover.

Rear seat screens



Battery disposal: Used batteries must be disposed of correctly, as they contain harmful substances. Seek advice on disposal from your Retailer/Authorised Repairer and/or your local authority.

REAR SEAT SCREEN - HOME SCREEN

The rear screens allow rear seat passengers to use selected features that are also available to the front occupants.

The features displayed on the rear screens can only be controlled by using the rear screen remote control. See **135, REAR SEAT SCREENS OVERVIEW**.

The following features are available for use by the rear passengers:

- **Media:** The Media system can be accessed via the rear screens. Some of the features available will be different to the front Touch screen options. See **114, AM/FM RADIO CONTROLS, 118, PORTABLE MEDIA CONNECTIONS, 126, TELEVISION CONTROLS, and 128, DVD PLAYER CONTROLS**.
- **Navigation:** The Navigation system can be viewed and operated from the rear screens. Some of the features available will be different to the front Touch screen options. See **168, REAR SEAT NAVIGATION**.
- **Seats:** The rear seat heating or cooling temperature can be adjusted via the rear screens. See **141, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.
- **Climate:** The Rear climate control system, can only be adjusted via the rear screens. The system can be locked via the front Touch screen. A Padlock icon is displayed when the Rear Climate control system has been locked.

The Rear climate control system cannot be switched off via the rear screens. See **139, REAR CLIMATE CONTROL**.

- **Settings:** Some settings for features shown on the rear screens are available by pressing the Settings button on the remote control, however, full functionality is controlled from the front Touch screen. See **106, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

REAR SEAT SCREENS OVERVIEW

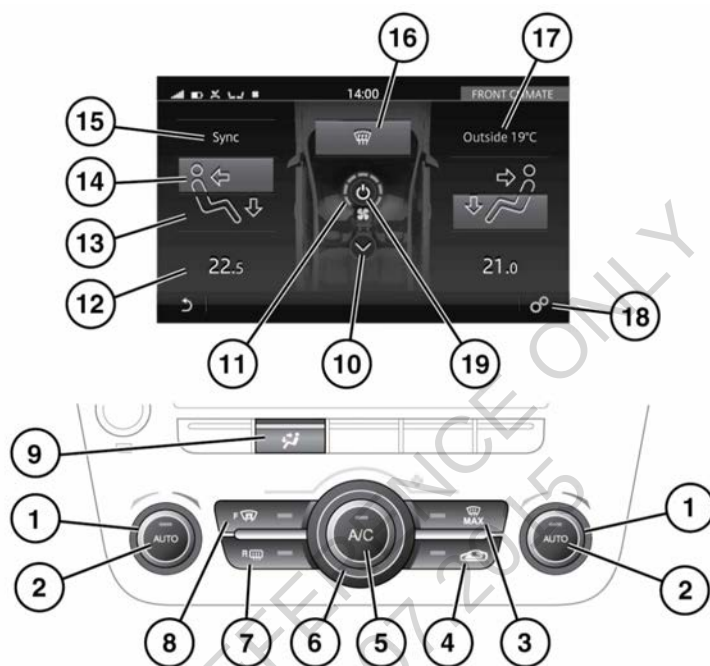
To activate the system using the remote control, press the appropriate screen select **(1)** or **(3)**, followed by the on/off button **(2)**.

Select the desired system. Subsequent selections on the remote control will operate the last selected system.

Note: To prevent accidental damage, always store the remote control in the stowage area provided, when not in use.

Climate and comfort

FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL



E 163 700

To access the **FRONT CLIMATE** screen, select **Climate** from the **HOME** screen or press the Climate button.

1. Temperature control: Rotate to adjust the temperature (16°C - 28°C). The temperature is displayed on the Touch screen. On the driver's side only, **HI** (high) or **LO** (low) can be selected.

2. **AUTO** control: Press to switch automatic operation on.

Note: *AUTO mode is the recommended normal operating mode. The Air Conditioning (A/C) and heating and ventilation controls automatically provide an optimum environment at the selected temperature.*

Note: *The temperatures displayed on the **FRONT CLIMATE** screen are indicators only. When viewing the **REAR CLIMATE** screen, these indicators become active and can be changed directly via the Touch screen.*

3. Defrost: Press to activate the blowers, A/C and the front and rear screen heaters and to prohibit recirculation.
4. Recirculation: Select to recirculate air inside the vehicle. Press briefly to select timed recirculation. Recirculation will switch off automatically after a set time (dependent on the ambient temperature).

Climate and comfort

Press and hold to select latched recirculation. Recirculation will remain on until the button is pressed again.

Note: *Prolonged use at low temperatures may cause the windows to mist.*

5. Air Conditioning A/C: Press to switch on/off. The A/C system can be switched on/off independently of the other Climate control functions.
6. The blower speed: Rotate to adjust the blower speed.
Blower speed is automatically set in AUTO mode. Adjusting the blower speed will cancel AUTO mode.
With the blower speed set at minimum, rotate the control counter-clockwise to switch the Climate control system off.
7. Rear screen heater: Press to switch on/off. If left on, it will deactivate after a timed period, dependent on the outside temperature.
8. Front screen heater: Press to switch on/off. If left on, it will deactivate after a timed period, dependent on the outside temperature.
Note: *In cold ambient conditions, the front and rear screen heaters will switch on automatically when the engine is started. This function can be switched on/off via **Climate Settings**.*
9. Press to access the **FRONT CLIMATE** screen on the Touch screen.
10. Select the down arrow or swipe down the screen to view the **REAR CLIMATE** menu. Select the up arrow or swipe up the screen to return to the **FRONT CLIMATE** menu. See **139, REAR CLIMATE CONTROL**.
11. Blower speed indicator: Only displays in manual mode.
12. Temperature display.

13. Air distribution to the feet: Touch to switch on/off.

14. Air distribution to the face: Touch to switch on/off.

15. **Sync**: Select to change all the front and rear passenger climate settings to match that of the driver.

16. Air distribution to the front windscreen: Touch to switch on/off.

17. External temperature display.

Note: *When the external temperature is low enough that ice may be present on the road, an amber snowflake warning lamp will illuminate in the Instrument panel. See **46, EXTERNAL TEMPERATURE (AMBER)**.*

18. Select **Climate Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. From this menu, the temperature units can be changed and automatic deployment of the front and rear heated screen function can be switched on/off. Also, the sensitivity of the **Air purity** and the **Auto air flow** speed can be adjusted, see **138, AIR QUALITY SENSOR**.

19. Select to switch the front and rear Climate control systems on/off.

Note: *Some functions are not available on all vehicles.*

Note: *If the Climate control system is switched off, pressing an AUTO button or the Defrost button will switch the Climate control system on.*

Note: *Water expelled by the A/C system may collect underneath the vehicle when parked. This is not a cause for concern.*

Climate and comfort

AUTOMATIC RECIRCULATION

If an air quality sensor is fitted, the Climate control system will monitor exterior air pollution and humidity, and select recirculation if either reaches a predetermined level. This feature only operates when the **Air purity** function is active. The sensitivity of the air quality sensor can be set via the **Climate Settings** screen. See **138, AIR QUALITY SENSOR**.

AIR QUALITY SENSOR

The sensitivity of the **Air purity** can be adjusted:

1. Select **Climate Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. See **136, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**.
2. Select **Air purity**, and then next select the appropriate level; **Low**, **Medium** or **High**. To deactivate, touch **OFF**.

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

Climate and comfort

REAR CLIMATE CONTROL



E173022

To access the **REAR CLIMATE** screen from the Touch screen, swipe down the vehicle graphic or select the down arrow from the **FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**. See **136, FRONT CLIMATE CONTROL**.

Alternatively, to access the **CLIMATE** screen from the rear screen, press the Climate button on the rear remote control. See **135, REAR SEAT SCREENS OVERVIEW**

1. Temperature adjustment: Select the red arrow to increase and the blue arrow to decrease the temperature. The temperature setting is displayed between the arrows.
2. Air distribution to the feet: Touch to switch on/off.
3. Air distribution to the face: Touch to switch on/off.
4. **AUTO**: Select to switch automatic operation on.

5. **Rear panel lock**: Select to disable the Rear climate control switches, in order to prevent the rear passengers from adjusting the Rear climate settings. Select again to re-enable the controls (front screen only).

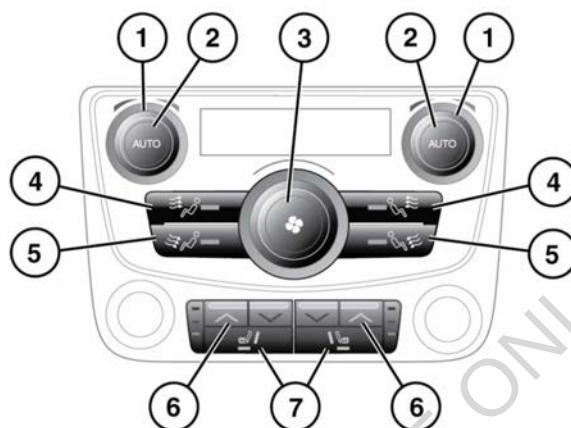
6. Select the up arrow or swipe up the vehicle graphic to view the **FRONT CLIMATE** screen. Select the down arrow to return to the **REAR CLIMATE** screen (front screen only).

In addition to the selectable controls, the **REAR CLIMATE** screen displays symbols that indicate the status of heating and ventilation functions.

Note: If the Climate control system is switched off, pressing a rear **AUTO** button will switch the system on.

Note: If the system is in Defrost mode, all rear controls are disabled and no airflow is available to the rear occupants.

Climate and comfort



E163706

The Rear climate can be set with the controls located in the rear centre console.

1. Temperature control: Rotate to adjust the temperature (16°C - 28°C). The temperature is displayed on the Touch screen (**REAR CLIMATE** screen).
2. **AUTO** control: Press to switch automatic operation on/off.
3. Blower speed: Rotate to the adjust blower speed.
4. Air distribution to the face: Press to switch on/off. The switch indicator illuminates when on.
5. Air distribution to the feet: Press to switch on/off. The switch indicator illuminates when on.
6. Seat temperature control: Press the red arrow to increase and the blue arrow to decrease the temperature. The LEDs illuminate to indicate the current setting.
7. Climatic seat zone control: Press to select **full seat**, **cushion only** or **back only** heating or cooling temperature. The switch indicators illuminate accordingly.

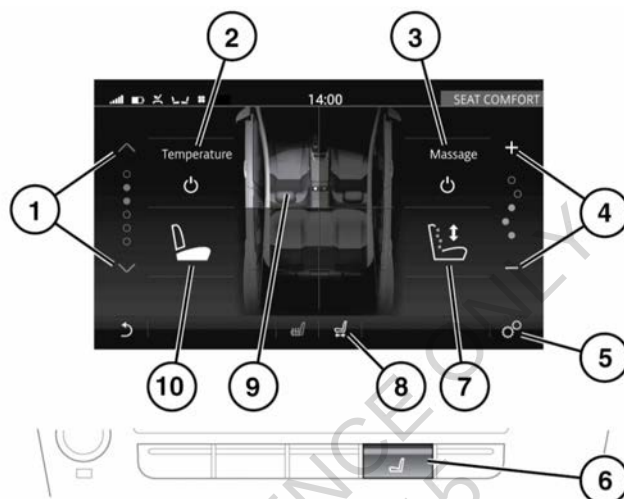
In addition to the selectable controls, the **CLIMATE** screen displays symbols that indicate the status of heating and ventilation functions.

Note: If the Climate control system is switched off, pressing a rear **AUTO** button will switch the system on.

Note: If the system is in Defrost mode, all rear controls are disabled and no airflow is available to the rear occupants.

Climate and comfort

SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT



E163705

To access the **SEAT COMFORT** screen, select the Seats icon on the **HOME** screen or press the Seats button on the fascia. See **100, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**.

Rear seat passengers are able to control the seat heating or cooling temperature via the switches on the rear centre console or from the rear screens. See **17, REAR SEAT MASSAGE** or **135, REAR SEAT SCREENS OVERVIEW**.

1. Temperature control: Select the red arrow to increase and the blue arrow to decrease seat heating or cooling temperature
2. Seat temperature on/off.
3. Switch the seat massage on/off. See **142, SEAT MASSAGE**.
4. Vary the intensity of the selected massage program (front seats only).
5. Select **Seat Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
6. Seats button: Press to display the **SEAT COMFORT** screen.

Alternatively, select the Seats icon on the **HOME** screen, or select **Seats** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen. See **104, EXTRA FEATURES**.

7. Select the seat massage program.
8. Touch the Seat adjust icon to toggle between the **SEAT COMFORT** and **SEAT ADJUST** screens. See **144, REMOTE SEATS**.
9. Select the required front or rear seat position.
10. Select the required seat zone for heating and cooling temperature position. See **142, CLIMATE SEATS**.

HEATED SEATS

Note: The seat heaters will only operate when the engine is running.

Climate and comfort

Rear seat passengers are able to control seat heating via the switches on the rear centre console or from the rear screens. See **17, REAR SEAT MASSAGE** or **135, REAR SEAT SCREEN - HOME SCREEN**.

The Heated seats are controlled through the Touch screen.

To access the heating controls for front and rear seats:

- Press the Seats button on the fascia.
- Or, select the Seats icon on the **HOME** screen.
- Or, select **Seats** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen. See **104, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Select the required front or rear seat position. Press the Power icon to switch the selected seat heating on/off.

To adjust the seat heating:

- Touch the red arrow to increase the heating.
- Touch the blue arrow to reduce the heating.

Alternatively, swipe the scale up or down to the required level of heating.

CLIMATE SEATS

Note: The Climate seats will only operate when the engine is running.

Rear seat passengers are able to control seat temperature via the switches on the rear centre console or from the rear screens. See **139, REAR CLIMATE CONTROL** or **135, REAR SEAT SCREEN - HOME SCREEN**.

To access the temperature controls for front and rear heated and cooled seats:

- Press the Seats button on the fascia.
- Or, select the Seats icon on the **HOME** screen.
- Or, select **Seats** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen. See **104, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Select the required front or rear seat position. Press the Power icon to switch the selected seat temperature on/off.

To adjust the seat temperature:

- Touch the red arrow to increase the temperature.
- Touch the blue arrow to reduce the temperature.

Alternatively, swipe the red/blue scale up or down to the required temperature.

To select the seat zone:

- Touch the Seat zone icon.
- Select the zone: **Back, Base** or **All**.

Seat zone selection is also available by pressing the selected seat position on the vehicle graphic.

SEAT MASSAGE

Note: Seat massage will only operate when the engine is running.

Seat massage may not operate when the vehicle's interior temperature is below 0°C or above 50°C.

Rear seat passengers are able to control seat massage via the switches on the rear centre console or from the rear screens. See **17, REAR SEAT MASSAGE** or **135, REAR SEAT SCREEN - HOME SCREEN**.

Front and rear seat massage can be controlled through the front Touch screen:

To access the seat massage controls for the front and rear:

- Press the Seats button on the fascia.
- Or, select the Seats icon on the **HOME** screen.
- Or, select **Seats** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen. See **104, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Select the required front or rear seat position. Press the Power icon to switch the selected seat massage on/off.

Climate and comfort

To adjust the seat massage program:

- Select the Seat massage program icon.
- Select the appropriate icon for **Wave**, **Up**, **Down**, **Shoulder** or **Lumbar** massage.

Note: Only **Wave**, **Shoulder** or **Lumbar** massage, is available for rear seats.

To adjust the seat massage intensity:

- Touch the + or - icon to vary the intensity of the selected program. Alternatively, swipe the scale up or down to the required massage intensity.

Note: Seat massage intensity is only available for front seats.

To set Auto Massage:

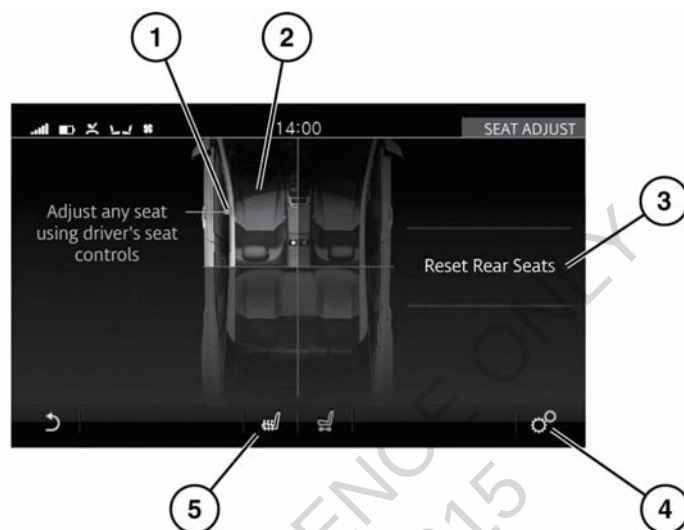
- Select **Seat Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. See **144, SEAT SETTINGS**.

Note: The massage programs have a 10 minute cycle, which will need to be reselected for repeated use.

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

Climate and comfort

REMOTE SEATS



E163919

The front and rear passenger seats can be controlled by the driver's seat adjustment controls. To select the remote seat controls screen, touch the Seat adjust icon to toggle between the **SEAT COMFORT** or **SEAT ADJUST** screens. See **141, SEAT COMFORT AND ADJUSTMENT**.

1. Driver's seat adjustment controls.
2. Select the front or rear seat position to be adjusted. Once selected, the driver can adjust the seat using the seat adjustment controls on the side of the driver's seat.
3. **Reset Rear Seats:** Touch to enable the memory function. Use button 3 on the driver's side to reset the rear seats to the home position. See **14, DRIVING POSITION MEMORY**.
4. Select **Seat Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. See **144, SEAT SETTINGS**.

5. Touch the Seat comfort icon to toggle between the **SEAT ADJUST** or **SEAT COMFORT** screens.

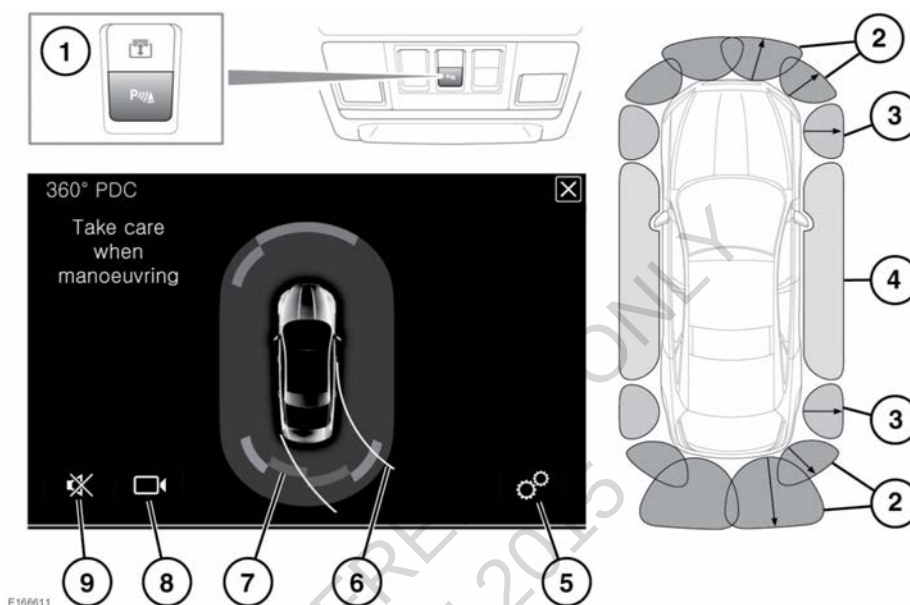
SEAT SETTINGS

Select **Seat Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu:

- **Easy Entry Exit** on/off:
When **Easy Entry Exit** is enabled, the rear seats will automatically return to their normal position when a rear door is opened. The left or right side seats will be activated by the corresponding door.
- **Auto Massage** on/off:
A time delay can be set from the start of a journey. Press **Time delay** to select the time options.

Parking features

USING THE PARKING AID



1. Parking Aid button.
2. Parking Aid detection zones.
3. 360° PDC (Park Distance Control) sensor detection zones.
4. 360° PDC (Park Distance Control) virtual detection zones.
5. Touch to select the **360° PDC SETTINGS** menu.
 - **Trajectory Lines:** Select **OFF** or **ON**.
6. Vehicle steering trajectory lines.
7. Detection zones.
 - Grey blocks indicate objects detected that do not pose a threat (not in a collision path with the vehicle).
 - Coloured blocks indicate collision threats detected by the sensors.
8. Touch to select the 360° PDC plan view and Rear camera display.
9. Touch to lower the volume of the 360° PDC beeps.



Parking Aid/360° Park Distance Control sensors may not detect moving objects, such as children and animals, until they are dangerously close. Always use extreme caution when manoeuvring.



The Parking Aid/360° Park Distance Control sensors may not detect some obstructions, for example, narrow posts or small objects close to the ground.



If accessories are fitted to the rear of the vehicle, particular care must be taken when reversing. The rear sensors will only indicate the distance from the bumper to the obstacle.



Parking features

The Parking Aid/360° PDC systems assist the driver while manoeuvring the vehicle at low speeds in confined spaces.

When active, object tracking along the front and sides will be displayed on the Touch screen. The 4 side sensor zones provide the 360° PDC monitoring along the vehicle sides. When an object falls within the vehicle's sensing range, the Parking Aid/360° PDC system will track the object and display it on the virtual sensors area. Graphics representing the vehicle's steering trajectory lines are also shown on this view.

Should an object not be a collision threat to the vehicle, it will be displayed as a grey block; all other collision threats are displayed in colour.

When the vehicle is stationary and an object/person approaches from the side, the virtual sensors will not detect it. Also, at vehicle start-up, the vehicle has no sensor information about side objects/persons in the virtual zones. In both of these situations, an ! will be displayed on the Touch screen in these zones.

The front, side, and outer rear sensors monitor a 1.2 m area around the vehicle. The inner rear sensors monitor a 1.8 m area at the rear of the vehicle.

The Parking Aid/360° PDC system is automatically activated when Reverse (R) gear is selected. The sensors will remain active until the vehicle's speed reaches 16 km/h (10 mph).

If a forward gear is subsequently selected, the front, outer rear, and side sensors will remain active until the vehicle's speed reaches 16 km/h (10 mph).

Note: The Parking Aid system will always be disabled if the vehicle's speed exceeds 16 km/h (10 mph).

When an object is identified as a collision threat, the Parking Aid system will emit a warning tone, which increases in frequency as the vehicle gets closer to the object. The tone becomes constant when the obstacle is within 300 mm of the vehicle.

If objects are detected in both the front and rear zones, an interchanging tone between the front and rear will sound.

Note: The sensors should be kept clean to maintain accuracy and performance. See 199, **SENSORS AND CAMERAS**.

PARKING AID SYSTEM FAULT

If a system fault is detected, the indicator button will flash 3 times. Also, a graphic and the message **Parking Aid Unavailable. Consult your dealer** will be displayed on the Touch screen. Contact a Retailer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

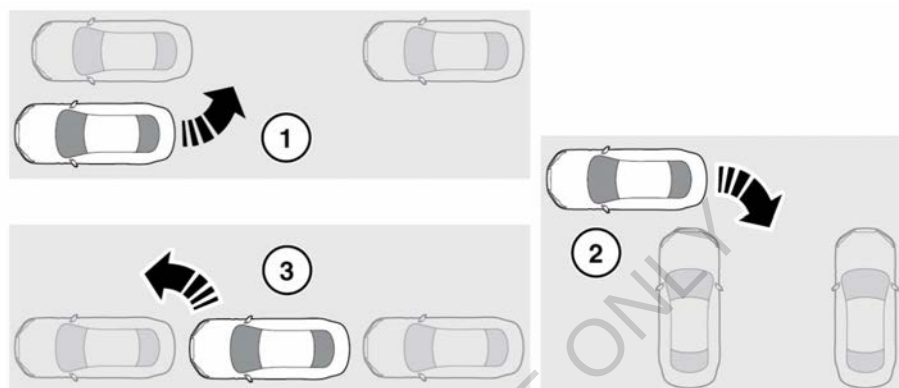
PARKING AID VOLUME

The volume of the Parking Aid warning tones can be adjusted by rotating the volume control while the tones are active. See 280, **DRIVER CONTROLS**.

Pressing the Mute icon on the Touch screen in the Parking Aid or Camera features will reduce the audio output for that manoeuvre only.

Parking features

PARK ASSIST



E172417

Using the Parking Aid sensing technology, Park Assist is an aid to manoeuvring the vehicle in and out of parking spaces. Park Assist will take control of the vehicle's steering system to manoeuvre the vehicle.

- ⚠ The driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake throughout the parking manoeuvre.

Note: A Park Assist manoeuvre can be cancelled at any point, by holding/turning the steering wheel or by pressing the Park Assist button.

Park Assist comprises of 3 different features:

1. Parallel parking: For reversing into a parking space that is parallel to the vehicle.
2. Perpendicular parking: For reversing into a parking space that is at 90° to the vehicle.
3. Parking exit: For exiting from a parallel parking space.

All Park Assist instructions are displayed in the Message centre.



Park Assist sensors may not detect moving objects, such as children and animals, until they are dangerously close. Always use extreme caution when manoeuvring and always use your mirrors.



Park Assist is a driving aid only. It remains the driver's responsibility to drive with due care and attention during parking manoeuvres.



Park Assist sensors may not detect some obstructions, e.g., narrow posts, small objects close to the ground, protruding elevated objects and, in some circumstances, bicycles or motor cycles parked alongside the kerb.



All sensors must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, e.g., leaves, mud, snow, ice, frost or insects. Failure to keep the sensors clean may result in sensor miscalculation or false indications.



Park Assist must not be used if:

- A temporary spare wheel is in use.

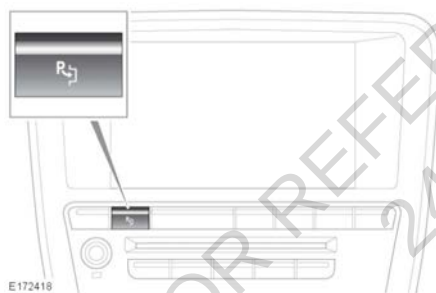
Parking features

- A sensor is damaged or the bumper is damaged sufficiently to affect a sensor mounting point.
- A sensor is obstructed by items attached to the vehicle, e.g., bumper covers, a bicycle rack, stickers, etc.
- The vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the vehicle's perimeter.

Note: All of the doors and the luggage compartment lid must be securely closed when using Park Assist.

Note: During any Park Assist manoeuvre, the Parking Aid system will remain active and will sound when objects are detected near the vehicle.

SELECTING PARK ASSIST



A short press of the Park Assist button will switch the system on.

The Park Assist button can be used to toggle through the 3 Park Assist options:

1. A first press of the button switches the system on and selects **Parallel park**.
2. A second press of the button selects **Perpendicular park**.
3. A third press of the button selects **Parking exit**.
4. A fourth press switches the system off.

When selected, all instructions for the 3 Park Assist options are displayed in the Message centre. Always take action when the text or audio alerts an instruction.

USING PARK ASSIST

For assistance when parking, select **Parallel park**, **Perpendicular park** or **Parking exit**.

As the vehicle is driven forwards, the size of a potential parking space is assessed.

Note: For Park Assist to search effectively, maintain a distance of 0.5 m to 1.5 m from the vehicle and the row of parked vehicles/obstacles between which you wish to park.

Note: When first activated, Park Assist searches for a space on the passenger side of the vehicle. To search for a space on the driver's side, signal a turn in that direction (using the direction indicator).

Note: The Park Assist auto-searching feature becomes active when the vehicle's speed is less than 30 km/h (18 mph). When Park Assist is activated, a previous space may already have been located. To obtain a previous space on the other side, signal a turn in that direction.

When a suitable space is found, a short confirmation tone is given and a message is displayed in the Message centre.

Note: If Park Assist senses that other vehicles are too close on either side to perform a parking manoeuvre, a space will be rejected, even if it is large enough for the vehicle. The driver retains the option to switch Park Assist off and attempt the manoeuvre manually.

For assistance in exiting a parallel parking space, select **Parking exit**.

For Parking exit to operate correctly, your vehicle must be parked in a space where other vehicles or objects are either:

- Parked in front of your vehicle.

Parking features

- Parked in front and behind your vehicle.



Parking exit is designed for exiting parallel spaces only. An attempt to use it in a perpendicular slot can result in a collision.



Do not perform a Parking exit manoeuvre until the message **Reverse With Care** is displayed in the Message centre. This is also accompanied by the automated steering symbol.

For all 3 Park Assist features, follow the instructions in the Message centre until the parking or exiting manoeuvre has been completed.



Although the vehicle takes control during the parking or exiting manoeuvre, the driver must maintain full control of the accelerator and brake pedals throughout.

Note: If the vehicle's speed exceeds 5 km/h (3 mph) during the manoeuvre, Park Assist will display a message until the vehicle's speed decreases to less than 5 km/h (3 mph). If the vehicle's speed exceeds 7 km/h (4 mph), Park Assist will deactivate.

If a system fault is detected, a continuous tone will sound and a message will be displayed in the Message centre. Consult a Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS



Park Assist is a supplement to, and not a replacement for, good observation and a safe driving style. It is the driver's responsibility, at all times, to make sure that reversing manoeuvres are carried out safely.

Park Assist may provide inaccurate results if:

- The size or shape of the parking space changes after it was measured.
- There is an irregular kerb alongside the parking space or the kerb is covered with leaves, snow, etc.
- The vehicle is being used to transport a load that extends beyond the perimeter of the vehicle.
- The vehicle had a repair or alteration that was not approved by a Retailer/Authorised Repairer.
- The vehicle has been fitted with non-approved wheels or tyres, or there is significant tyre wear.
- One of the parked vehicles has an attachment at a raised height such as a flat bed, snow plough or cherry picker.
- The parking space is located on a corner or curve.
- The sensors are dirty or covered in mud, ice or snow.
- The weather is foggy, raining or snowing.
- The road surface is bumpy such as gravel.
- It encounters an obstruction that is thin or wedge shaped.
- It encounters an obstruction that is elevated and/or protruding, such as ledges or tree branches.
- It encounters an obstruction with corners and sharp edges.

PARK ASSIST TROUBLESHOOTING

Park Assist is not searching for a parking space:

- The system may not be activated.
- The vehicle may be travelling at a speed above 30 km/h (18 mph).
- The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice or snow.

Parking features

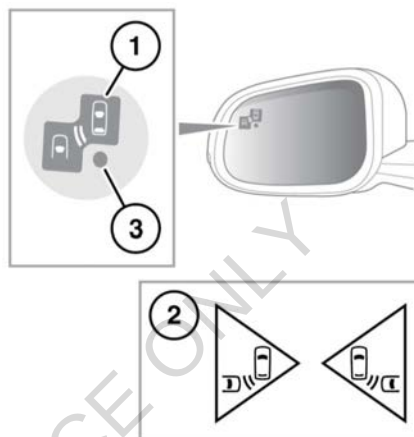
Park Assist does not offer a certain parking space:

- The sensors may be covered or partly obscured by dirt, mud, ice or snow.
- The space may not be large enough or there may not be enough space on the opposite side of the vehicle for the front to swing out during the manoeuvre.
- The vehicle may have been driven too far away (more than 1.5 metres) from a row of parked vehicles.
- The vehicle may have been driven too close (within 410 mm) to a row of parked vehicles.
- The vehicle may have been driven in reverse. Park Assist will only search for a parking space when the vehicle is travelling in a forward direction.
- The approach angle may not be suitable.

Park Assist has not positioned the vehicle accurately within the space:

One or more of the system limitations criteria may have been met. See **149, PARK ASSIST LIMITATIONS**.

REVERSE TRAFFIC DETECTION



The Reverse Traffic Detection (RTD) system is a supplement to, not a replacement for, safe driving, good observation and use of the exterior and rear-view mirrors.

Note: RTD is automatically disabled when Park Assist is active.

In addition to the functionality provided by the Rear camera, the RTD system provides a warning to the driver of any moving vehicle, at either side, that may pose an accident risk during a reversing manoeuvre.

An amber Warning icon (1) will flash in the relevant exterior mirror and an audible warning will be emitted to indicate the presence of a moving vehicle. The Rear camera screen or the Parking Aid screen (2) will also show a warning on the relevant side(s) of the screen. To switch from the Rear camera to the Parking Aid screen, touch the plan view Parking Aid vehicle image. To return to the Camera system, touch the Cameras icon on the Parking Aid screen.

Parking features

The system can be enabled or disabled via the Instrument panel menu. See **41, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**. When RTD is disabled, an amber warning indicator (3) will be displayed in both exterior mirrors.

REVERSE TRAFFIC DETECTION SENSORS

The Reverse Traffic Detection (RTD) system will automatically disable if any of the sensors become partially or completely obscured. The amber warning indicator dot will illuminate in the exterior mirrors and the message **Reverse Traffic Sensor Blocked** appears in the Message centre.

Check that there is nothing obscuring all rear bumper surfaces and it is clear from ice, frost, snow, mud and dirt. See **199, SENSORS AND CAMERAS**.

If a fault with a radar sensor is detected, an amber warning indicator dot will illuminate in the exterior mirrors and the message **Reverse Traffic Detection System Not Available** is displayed in the Message centre.

Note: *Even if the detected fault only affects the radar sensor on one side of the vehicle, the whole system is disabled. If the fault is temporary, the system will operate correctly once the engine has been switched off and then on again.*

If a fault occurs, consult a Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

Cameras

SINGLE REAR CAMERA

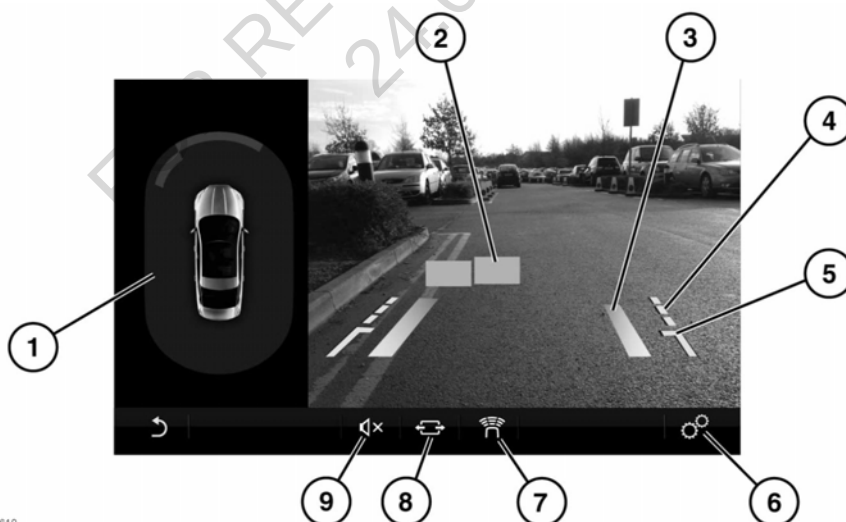
- ⚠ It remains the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them when reversing.
- ⓘ Some overhanging objects or barriers which could cause damage to the vehicle may not be detected by the camera.
- ⓘ The camera must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, for example, ice, frost, snow, leaves, mud or insects. Failure to keep the camera clean may result in miscalculation or false indications. **199, SENSORS AND CAMERAS.**
- ⓘ Do not attach stickers or objects to the rear bumper that may interfere with the cameras.



The Rear camera is located on the rear bumper, as illustrated.

When Reverse (R) gear is selected, the Touch screen will automatically display a high definition colour image from the rear of the vehicle. Overlaid on the image are reversing and parking guidance lines.

Note: The Rear camera display has priority over the Parking Aids display and many other Touch screen features. To cancel the Rear camera display at any time, push the Home button or touch the Return icon.



Cameras

1. 360° PDC (Park Distance Control) plan view: Touch to view the full screen view of the Parking Aid feature.
2. Parking Aid information: Colour graphics indicate threats detected by the sensors.
3. Parking guidance solid line: The projected path, based on the current steering wheel position.
4. Parking guidance dotted line: The safe working width of the vehicle (including the exterior mirrors).
5. Luggage compartment access guidance line: Do not reverse beyond this point if luggage compartment access is required.
6. Touch to select the **Parking Aid Settings** menu.
 - **Parking Guidance:** Select **OFF** or **ON**.
 - **Parking Aid Graphics:** Select **OFF** or **ON**.
 - **PDC Plan View:** Select **OFF** or **ON**.
7. Touch to switch the Parking Aid graphics on/off. See **145, USING THE PARKING AID**.
8. Touch to toggle between a wider or narrower view of the camera image.
9. Touch to lower the volume of the 360° PDC beeps.

The Rear camera display on the Touch screen will discontinue automatically when either of the following apply:

- Drive (D) is selected for longer than 5 seconds.
- Drive (D) is selected and/or vehicle speed is greater than 18 km/h (11 mph).

SURROUND CAMERA SYSTEM



It remains the driver's responsibility to detect obstacles and estimate the vehicle's distance from them when manoeuvring the vehicle.



Some overhanging objects or barriers which could cause damage to the vehicle may not be detected by the camera.



The camera must be kept clean and free from debris or obstructions, for example, ice, frost, snow, leaves, mud or insects. Failure to keep the camera clean may result in miscalculation or false indications. See **199, SENSORS AND CAMERAS**.



E174465

The 4 Surround cameras are located as follows:

- One located in the centre of the front lower grille.
- One underneath each of the exterior door mirrors.
- One located in the centre of the rear bumper, above the number plate.

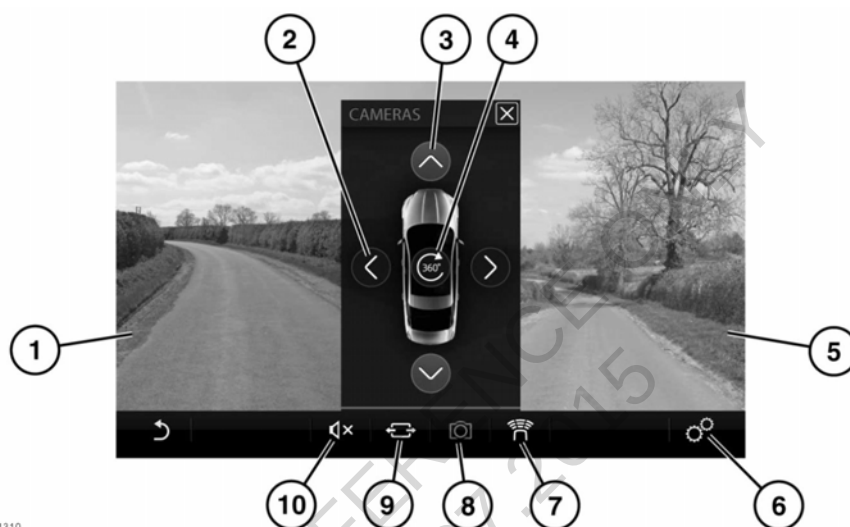
Note: The quality of the camera views may vary in different lighting conditions.

Cameras



To switch on the Surround camera system, press the camera button or select **Cameras** from the **EXTRA FEATURES** screen. See **104, EXTRA FEATURES**.

Note: When selected, the Surround camera system will default to a view dependent on the vehicle's speed and the selected gear.



E171310

1. Left or front camera split-screen image: When presented as a split image, pressing either image will switch to a full screen view of that image.
2. Camera selection arrow (shown as unselectable if a max of 2 images are already selected).
3. Camera selection arrow (camera selected).
4. 360° view: Touch to display a 'birds-eye' view of the vehicle and its immediate surroundings using all 4 cameras.
5. Right or rear camera split-screen image. When presented as a split image, pressing either image will switch to a full screen view of that image.
6. Touch to select the **Camera Settings** menu.
 - **Parking Guidance:** Select **OFF** or **ON**.
7. Touch to switch the Parking Aid graphics on/off. See **106, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.
8. Touch to select a different view.

Note: A maximum of 2 views can be displayed at any one time (including the 360° view). To change a camera view if 2 views are selected, one of the views has to be deselected first.
9. Touch to toggle between a wider or narrower view of the image. (front and rear camera images only).
10. Touch to mute the volume of the Parking aid warning tones.

Cameras

Camera shortcuts



Press the Camera button for the following shortcut options:

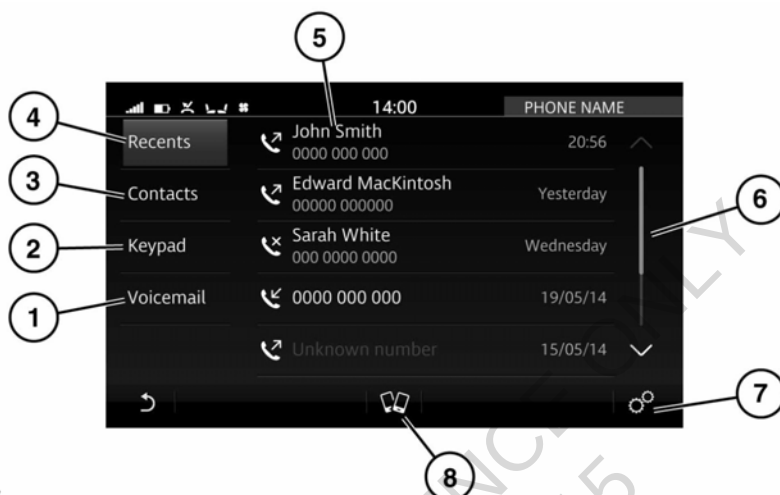
- When in Reverse (**R**):
 - Press once to select the **Rear Junction** view.
 - Press twice to select the **T Junction View**.
 - Press a third time to return to the **Rear Junction** view.
- When in a forward gear, at speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph):
 - Press once to select the **T Junction View**.
 - Press twice to select the **Rear Junction** view.
 - Press a third time to return to the **T Junction View**.
- When in Neutral (**N**) or Park (**P**):
 - Press once to select the **Plan View**.
 - Press twice to select the **T Junction View**.
 - Press a third time to select the **Rear Junction** view.

Pan and Zoom tools

When in a full screen view of a camera image, touching the image will display the Pan and Zoom tools. This will allow the image to be viewed at 3 levels of detail and can be manipulated left, right, up, and down. Double tap the image to jump to the middle level of zoomed detail and allow the same Pan and Zoom functionality.

Phone

PHONE SYSTEM OVERVIEW



E163067

To access the PHONE screen, see **100, TOUCH SCREEN HOME MENU**.

1. **Voicemail:** Touch to access the voicemail options.
If no voicemail number has been set, this will take you to the keypad to enter and set the voicemail number.
2. **Keypad:** Touch to access the keypad dialling mode.
3. **Contacts:** Touch to view the downloaded contacts.
4. **Recents:** Touch to display a list of recent dialled, received and missed calls.

Note: The vehicle will display the list in the order that the calls were recorded. If this information is not available, they will be displayed as sent from the phone. Some phones may arrange the list in reverse or in another order.

Note: The system will remove duplicate entries of the same call type from the same caller e.g., 4 outgoing calls from the same caller will be reduced to one outgoing call.

5. Displays the name and/or number dialled and the call duration. Also displays the keypad, recent calls, contacts or voicemail.
6. Touch the scroll bar or arrows, to move up or down the list. Alternatively, swipe the list in the direction required.
7. Select **Phone Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Touch to manage the following features: **Settings for All Phones**, **Settings for 'name of phone'** and **Bluetooth Settings**.
8. Touch to access the **PAIRED DEVICES** screen.

Phone

PHONE SAFETY

-  Switch off your telephone in areas with a high explosion risk. This includes filling stations, fuel storage areas or chemical factories, as well as places where the air contains fuel vapour, chemicals or metal dust.
-  Always stow your mobile phone securely.
-  The functioning of cardiac pacemakers or hearing aids may be impaired when the phone is in use. Check with a doctor or manufacturer whether any such devices you or your passengers are using, are sufficiently protected against high-frequency energy.

The Health Industry Manufacturers' Association recommends that a minimum separation of 15 centimetres is maintained between a wireless phone antenna and a pacemaker, to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker. These recommendations are consistent with the independent research by, and recommendations of, Wireless Technology Research.

PHONE COMPATIBILITY

Please refer to the **Owners** section of the website: at www.jaguar.com, for a list of compatible phones.

Note: The **Bluetooth®** wireless technology devices listed, have been tested for compatibility with Jaguar Land Rover vehicles. Performance will vary, based on the phone's software version, battery condition, coverage and your network provider. Phones are warranted by their manufacturer, not by Jaguar.

PAIRING AND CONNECTING USING THE PHONE

Note: The process of pairing and connecting your phone with the vehicle, using the phone, will vary depending on the type of phone used.

1. Switch the ignition on and make sure that the Touch screen is active.
 2. When pairing a device for the first time, select **Tap to connect phone** from the **HOME** screen. This makes the vehicle's **Bluetooth** system discoverable. Alternatively, to pair an additional phone, select **Pair New Device**.
 3. Using the phone, search for **Bluetooth** devices.
On some phones, this is referred to as a new paired device. See your phone's operating instructions for further information.
The vehicle's default discoverable name is **Jaguar XJ**.
 4. When the vehicle's name is discovered, follow the on-screen instructions. Select **Yes** when prompted, to confirm the pairing. Alternatively, on some older phones, you will be requested to enter a PIN (Personal Identification Number). Either enter the PIN **1234**, or select **Yes** to confirm that the PIN displayed on your phone matches the vehicle's PIN.
 5. Once your phone is paired and connected to the system, select the Return icon or the **HOME** screen shortcut button and then select the **PHONE** screen. Alternatively press the Phone shortcut button.
- Note:** Some phones require the **Bluetooth** device pairing to be set as 'authorised' or 'trusted' in order to automatically connect. Please refer to your phone's operating instructions for further information.

Phone

To select the paired phone's settings, select **Phone Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. A list of all paired phones will be displayed; touch the paired phone's name.

Paired phones will have the option to be used as either a phone, media device or both. These can be selected in the **Paired Devices** list, accessed by selecting **All Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Next select **Features**, followed by **Bluetooth**.

MANAGING TWO CALLS

Two calls can be taken on the same phone. Notification will be given when a second call is received. When accepting a second call, the first call is automatically put on hold.

Alternatively, a second call can be dialled. Touch the Hold icon to put the current call on hold. Select **Add call** and then **Contacts** to display the list of contacts, or **Keypad** to dial or enter the number.

When there are 2 separate calls, the Hold icon changes to a Swap icon. Touching the Swap icon or the contact name/number, will swap between the current call and the call on hold.

Touch **End Call** to end the current call and return to the remaining call. Touching and holding **End Call**, will end both calls.

Note: If more than 2 calls (e.g., a conference call) are active on the phone when connecting to the vehicle's phone system, these will be maintained. However, only a maximum of 2 call details will be displayed. When more than 2 calls are in progress when connecting, any calls that are not active (on hold or incoming) will be rejected.

MERGE CALLS

When 2 calls are in progress on the same phone, they can be merged into one conference call, by selecting **Merge**.

Touch **Hold/Mute** to hold both calls or **End Call** to end both calls.

Merge cannot be deselected. If one caller ends their call, the remaining call stays active.

PHONE SYSTEM ICONS



Connect: Use to send or accept a call.



Disconnect: Use to end or reject a call.



Hold: Touch to hold a call; touch again to return to the call.



Swap a call.



Switch the call to your phone handset.



Mute microphone: Initiate Privacy mode. While selected, the caller will not hear you talking.



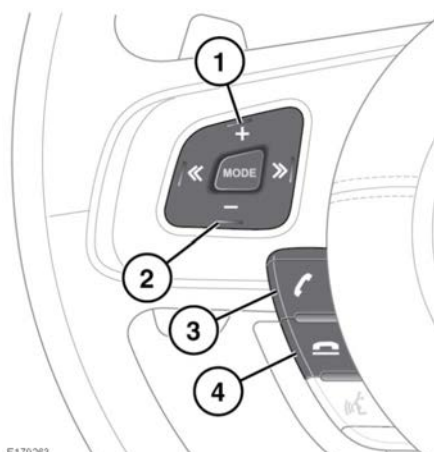
Phone signal strength indicator.



Phone battery level indicator.

Phone

STEERING WHEEL PHONE CONTROLS



1. Increases the volume when in a call, scrolls up a displayed list or numbers listed for a stored contact.
2. Decreases the volume when in a call, or scrolls down a displayed list or numbers listed for a stored contact.
3. Press to answer an incoming call. Press to end a call. Press and release to dial a number/contact or to access the Recent calls list.
4. Disconnect switch: Press to end or reject a call.

PHONE CALL VOLUME

The phone call volume is operated by the Media system's volume control.

If the Media system is in use when a phone call is active, the Media system source is suppressed for the duration of the call.

MICROPHONE VOLUME

The microphone's volume can be adjusted. Select **Phone Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu, followed by the Settings option for the required phone. To adjust the **Microphone Volume**, touch + or - to adjust to the required level.

CONTACTS

Contacts stored in the memory of a paired phone can be automatically downloaded to the vehicle's Contacts list each time the phone is connected to the system. See **157, PHONE COMPATIBILITY**.

Certain phones store the contacts in 2 different areas: the SIM card and the phone's memory. The vehicle's system will access only those numbers stored in the phone's memory.

To access contacts:

1. From the **PHONE** screen, select **Contacts**.
2. Use the scroll bar or swipe the list to search alphabetically up or down.
3. Identify the required contact from the displayed list and touch to call. If a contact has more than one number stored, select the required number from the list.

Note: It may be necessary to use the scroll bar to see the entire list.

If your phone supports contact cards, you will be able to view the contact information in the vehicle's contact directory.

The order in which the list is displayed can be changed. From the **Phone Settings** menu, select **Phone**. Select **First Name** or **Last Name** to change the display for the connected phone.

To delete the **Contacts** list, select **Phone Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. Select **Delete From Car** for the connected phone.



Phone

Once the Contacts have been deleted, **Auto Update Contacts** will be off. This will remain off for the selected phone until reactivated.

Note: *If Contacts are deleted, incoming calls will display the number but no name.*

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

Bluetooth®

BLUETOOTH® INFORMATION

Bluetooth® is the name for short-range Radio Frequency (RF) technology that allows electronic devices to communicate wirelessly with each other.

The Jaguar **Bluetooth** wireless technology system supports **Bluetooth®** Hands-Free Profile (HFP), Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP) and Audio Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP).

***Note:** HFP and A2DP/AVRCP profiles can be connected independently, so a phone can be connected via one, while a media device can be connected via the other, at the same time.*

Before making use of the vehicle's **Bluetooth** system, your **Bluetooth** phone/media device must be paired to the vehicle's system.

Each time the ignition is switched on, the system will attempt to connect with the last connected phone/media device.

As phones/media devices have a wide range of audio and echo characteristics, it may take a few seconds for the vehicle's system to adapt and deliver optimum audio performance. To achieve this, it may be necessary to reduce the in-vehicle volume and ventilation fan speed slightly.

Navigation

THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM

Navigation instruction is by map and turn information displayed on the Touch screen and in the Instrument panel, and can be complemented by Voice guidance. The system uses signals from Global Positioning System (GPS) satellites, combined with information from vehicle sensors and from data stored on the hard drive, to establish the vehicle's position.

Using this combination of data sources, the vehicle's navigation computer enables you to plan and follow a route map to your desired destination.

The Touch screen is used to control navigation via menus and map displays. The vehicle's Instrument panel can be set up to show navigation instructions and maps.

 **Operate the system only when it is safe to do so.**

Note: The speed camera alert feature is not available in certain markets.

Note: The speed camera alert feature can be enabled/disabled in Settings, see **169, SETTINGS**.

Note: Speed limit warnings will not be displayed in the Navigation system on vehicles with Traffic sign recognition.

The requirements of national Road Traffic Regulations always apply.

Note: Certain features and location-based services utilise your current location. You can manage which features are able to utilise mobile data, and your location, in the connectivity and navigation Settings.

Observation of traffic signs and local traffic regulations always take priority.

The Navigation system serves solely as an aid to navigation. In particular, the Navigation system cannot be used as an aid to orientation when visibility is poor.

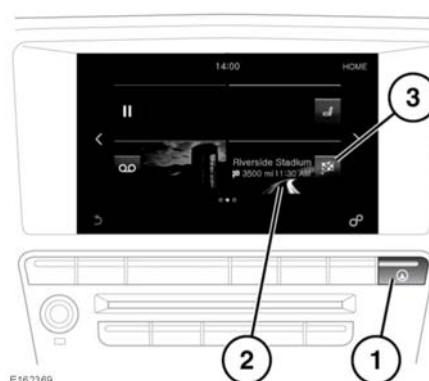
GPS signals may occasionally be interrupted due to physical barriers, such as tunnels, and roads under raised highways.

However, direction and speed sensors on the vehicle will minimise any adverse effect on the Navigation system. Normal operation will resume once the obstruction has been passed.

Under certain conditions, it is possible for the vehicle's position shown on screen to be incorrect. This may happen when:

- Driving on a spiral ramp in a building.
- Driving on or beneath elevated roads.
- Two roads are close and parallel.
- The vehicle is transported to another location.
- The vehicle has been rotated on a turntable.
- The vehicle's battery has been disconnected.

USING THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM



1. Navigation shortcut button:

Navigation

- If the navigation map is shown on the Touch screen: Press to view the **NAVIGATION** main menu.
 - If the navigation map is not shown on the Touch screen: Press to view the **NAVIGATION** map screen.
2. Touch for navigation.
 3. Navigation shortcut.

- If no destination is currently selected: Touch to enter a destination.
- If a destination is currently selected: Touch to cancel guidance.

Note: A first time user should set up personal preferences in the Settings area. These include settings for managing which features can connect to the internet when on the home network or while roaming. These settings are applied whenever navigation is used.



When Navigation is selected, and the vehicle is stationary, the Navigation system will display a map view of the current vehicle position. A side panel containing quick access tiles is also displayed.

Note: The quick access tiles act as shortcuts, to allow quick access to certain Navigation system functionality.

Note: The quick access tiles are hidden when the vehicle's speed reaches a predetermined level, and will not appear again until the ignition is switched off and back on again. If required, the options can be accessed via the Navigation menus.

Note: If the Navigation system is started when the vehicle's speed is already above the predetermined level, the quick access tiles will not appear.

1. Touch to return to the previous screen.



Navigation

2. Touch to scroll up or down the tile list.
3. Quick access tile options: Select the up or down arrows to scroll through the available options. Options include:
 - My commute
 - Fuel search
 - Recent destinations
 - Home
 - Licence information.
4. The current vehicle position and direction.
5. Map selector: Press to select **2D**, **3D** or **Satellite** map view. When guidance is active, combination views based on **2D**, **3D**, and **Satellite** map view become available, such as **Traffic**, **Next manoeuvre**, and **Route overview**.

***Note:** Internet connectivity is required for satellite map view.*
6. Select **Navigation Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
7. Select the **NAVIGATION** main menu.

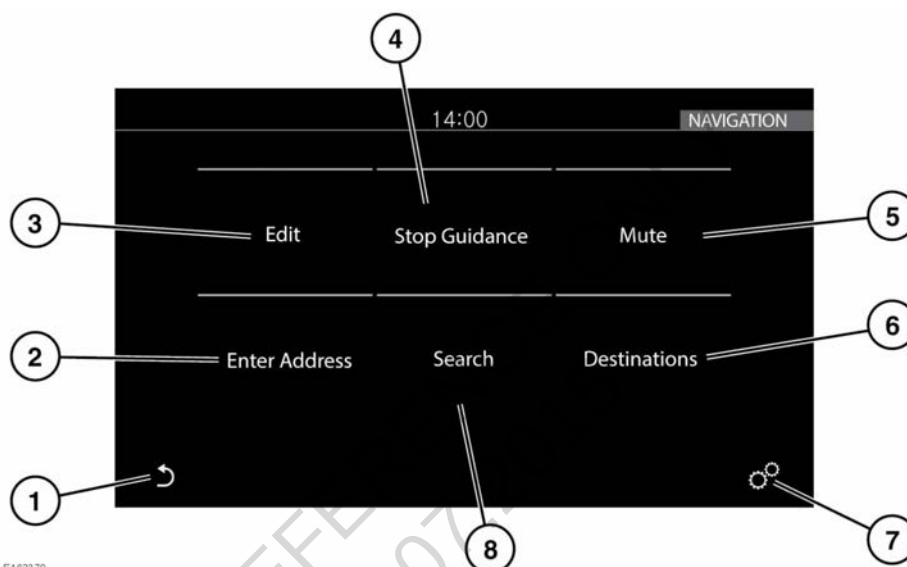
When the vehicle is in motion and no active route is selected, an assistance map will be displayed.

Navigation

MAIN MENU



When shown, touch the Menu icon to access the **NAVIGATION** main menu.



E162370

Note: Some of the options listed are only available when a route has been selected.

1. Touch to return to the map screen.
2. **Enter Address:** Provides a choice of options for entering an address. See **165, ADDRESS ENTRY**.
3. **Edit:** Touch to edit the current route. See **169, EDIT ROUTE**.
4. **Stop Guidance:** Cancels the current route guidance, if a route is selected.
5. **Mute:** Touch to mute the Navigation system's voice guidance.
6. **Destinations:** Shows your saved locations (e.g., home address and saved favourites), and most recent destinations.

Note: When signed into an InControl Navigation account (see **173, PROFILES**) destinations can be automatically synchronised between the vehicle, the internet, and the smartphone app.

7. Select **Navigation Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.
8. **Search:** Type as text into the search box, or select from the POI categories listed.

ADDRESS ENTRY

Note: If the full address is not known, the **Search** feature may be more effective, see **166, SEARCH**.

When searching, only the relevant keys for the next valid character are highlighted for selection.



Navigation

Previous entries, or search history, will also be displayed below the text entry box.

To enter an address:

1. From the **NAVIGATION** main menu (see **165, MAIN MENU**), touch **Enter Address**.
2. Input the **Country**.
3. Input the **City, Town** or **Postcode**. Previous entries and narrowed search results will be displayed. Select the required entry and touch **Ok**.
4. Input the **Street** name, **Number**, or **Junction**, if applicable. Previous entries and narrowed search results will be displayed. Select the required entry, and touch **Ok**.

***Note:** In some markets, the entry fields may vary from those listed above.*

5. The map displays the entered location, as the address is entered. If the location displayed is correct, touch **Drive there**, to confirm.
6. The Navigation system will calculate, and display, a number of routes. Select **Start** to begin navigation. If the highlighted route is not the desired route, select **Route Options** to change the route. The distance and Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA) for each route will be displayed.
7. Select the chosen route and then touch **Start navigating**.

***Note:** The routes will be calculated using the selected route preferences (avoiding toll roads, ferries, etc.). The route preferences can be adjusted while setting the destination, if required.*

***Note:** An address can be added as a waypoint after a destination has been selected.*

***Note:** Previous entries, or search results as they are narrowed, are displayed on the screen behind the keyboard. If required, hide the keyboard for better access.*

SEARCH

***Note:** If the full address is known, the Address entry feature may be more effective, see **165, ADDRESS ENTRY**.*

Search can be used to locate an address, or a Point Of Interest (POI).

To search for an address:

1. From the **NAVIGATION** main menu, touch **Search**.
2. If a route is already active, the following list of search areas will be available from the drop-down menu:
 - Along the route
 - Most relevant
 - Near the waypoint 1, 2, or 3, etc.***Note:** The selected route must include one or more waypoints for this option to be available.*
 - Near your destination.
3. Input your search choice into the text box.
4. Select your search result from the list provided.
5. Touch **Start** to begin navigation.

***Note:** The routes will be calculated using the selected route preferences (avoiding toll roads, ferries, etc.). The route preferences can be adjusted while setting the destination, if required.*

To search for a POI:

1. From the **NAVIGATION** main menu, touch **Search**.
2. If a route is already active, the following list of search areas will be available from the drop-down menu:
 - Along the route
 - Most relevant
 - Near the waypoint 1, 2, or 3, etc.

Navigation

Note: The selected route must include one or more waypoints for this option to be available.

- Near your destination.
3. Select a search category from the list (**Petrol station, Eat & Drink, Parking Facility, ATM/Bank**).

Note: Petrol stations can be sorted by the price of their fuel, see **172, FUEL PRICES SERVICE**.

4. Select your search result from the list provided.

The following POI details and options may also be available:

- POI phone number: Touch to view the POI's phone number, and phone the POI, if required.
- Add to favourites: Touch to add the selected POI to your favourites.
- Nearest car park: Touch to search for nearby car parks, if the selected destination or waypoint is not a car park.
- Additional information (postal address, opening times, reviews, photographic view of the POI), where available.

Note: A POI or address can be added as a waypoint after a destination has been selected.

Note: If the vehicle is connected to the internet, the search function can be performed using cloud-based information. This feature can be enabled/disabled in Settings, see **169, SETTINGS**.

Navigation

MAP SPLIT SCREEN



E178402

1. Touch to access the **NAVIGATION** main menu.
2. Left map view, scale/zoom setting.
Note: The map zoom setting can be altered by using a pinch or push motion, and the map view can be panned using a swipe motion.
3. Active route: Next direction display.
4. Selected additional view option: Route overview, Next manoeuvre, Compass or Traffic.
5. Map selector: Press to select 2D, 3D or satellite map view.
Note: Internet connectivity is required for satellite map view.
6. The current vehicle position and direction.
7. Current location.

8. Information bar: Displays information including time, distance, and ETA (Estimated Time of Arrival).

REAR SEAT NAVIGATION

The Navigation system can be viewed and operated from the rear screens.

Note: The navigation features available on the rear screens will be different from the front Touch screens.

Rear seat passengers can monitor the selected route (estimated arrival time, distance to destination, etc.) and view or suggest new locations.

To view the navigation map on a rear screen, select the Home button on the remote control. Use the cursor controls to select **Navigation** and press the **OK** button to confirm.

Navigation

To view the navigation menu, press the **OK** button again. Use the cursor controls to select **Search**, **Browse map**, or **Settings**.

Select **Search**, to display a list of options for selecting a new location. After selecting a new location, select **Send To Driver**. The driver will receive a prompt on the front Touch screen to accept or refuse the selection. See **133, REAR SEAT REMOTE CONTROL** and **135, REAR SEAT SCREENS OVERVIEW**.

MAP AUTO ZOOM

When Auto-zoom is enabled, the map will automatically zoom in when the vehicle is travelling at slow speeds, and zooms out when travelling at higher speeds.

Auto-zoom can be enable/disable in the Navigation Settings menu, see **169, SETTINGS**.

SETTINGS

Touch the navigation Settings icon to view the following options:

- **Alerts:** Enable/disable from a list of alert categories, see **170, ALERTS**.
- **My Commute:** Set up your commute, see **171, MY COMMUTE**.
- **Sync settings:** Adjust the synchronisation settings between the vehicle and other devices.
- **Your installed maps:** View the details of the maps currently loaded to the vehicle's Navigation system.
- **Keyboard layouts:** Select additional keyboard layouts.
- **Route preferences:** Select to avoid certain road features.
- **Set up customised searches:** Add a customised search to your favourites, or frequent searches.

- **App details:** View details of the installed Navigation system.
- **Auto-zoom:** Enable/disable auto-zoom, see **169, MAP AUTO ZOOM**.
- **Map features:** Enable/disable from a list of available features.
- **Manage profile data :** Clear the search history or delete all profile data.

EDIT ROUTE

A waypoint can be added or deleted, a route rearranged, or a round trip created for a selected route.

Note: Waypoints can also be added from *Destinations, Address Entry, or Search in the NAVIGATION main menu, or by selecting a point on the map.*

From the **NAVIGATION** main menu (see **165, MAIN MENU**), touch **Edit**.

The following options can be used:

- **Add Waypoint:** Touch to add a waypoint to the current route.
- **Remove waypoint:** Touch the Bin icon to remove the waypoint from the current route.
- **Change the order of the waypoints:** Touch the up/down arrows to re-order the waypoints.
- **Return Journey:** Select to make a selected destination in to a round trip.

Note: *The return journey will not include any of the selected waypoints. If waypoints are required, they must be added in the normal manner.*

VIEW OPTIONS

The Navigation map and guidance views can be adjusted as follows:

- **2D:** Flat two-dimensional view.
- **3D:** Three-dimensional perspective view.

Navigation

- **Satellite:** Birds-eye view of the surroundings.
Note: This feature requires an internet connection.
- **Next manoeuvre:** Shows a detailed view of the next junction or turn.
- **Route overview:** View of the full route.
- **Traffic** (where available): Possible hazards or delays.
- **Compass:** Shows a digital compass, with your heading shown in degrees.

ALERTS

Alerts can be selected from the **Navigation Settings** menu.

- **Manoeuvre details:** A list of the next required manoeuvres.
- **Junction view:** Active on multi-lane highways, when approaching a junction. Junction view shows the lane information for the next junction.
- **Low fuel Automatic Search:** Available online and offline. Petrol stations are listed by price. Preferred station name and type of fuel can be selected.
- **Safety camera:** Notification of safety cameras.

YOUR FAVOURITES

When detailed information is displayed about an address or place, tap the Add favourite icon and the place is added to your list of favourites.

Displayed information that is already a favourite will display the Edit favourite icon. This will display information about the favourite location and the option to change the icon and name, or delete it from your list of favourites.

If no route is selected, select the required favourite to set as a destination. If a route is selected, select the required favourite to add it as a waypoint.

*Note: When signed into an InControl Navigation account (see **173, PROFILES**) favourites can be automatically synchronised between the vehicle, the internet, and the smartphone app.*

MAP UPDATES

Note: Due to the map data file size, it is recommended that a USB 3.0 memory device is used to update the map data.

Note: The vehicle must be stationary to enable the map update to commence. Once the update process has commenced, the vehicle may be driven.

Note: The Navigation system cannot be interacted with until the map update is complete. If a route was active before the map update commenced, the navigation guidance will be limited to voice guidance only.

*Note: The USB drive must **NOT** be removed, or the ignition switched off, before the update is complete, as this will cause the update to be cancelled and potentially leave the system without any available map data.*

The map data in the Navigation system can be updated by downloading the updated map data to a USB memory device.

Insert the USB drive into the USB socket and follow the onscreen instructions within the Navigation system to update the maps.

*Note: Only the USB sockets in the front cubby box can be used for map updates, see **63, STORAGE COMPARTMENTS**.*

Information on the installed maps can be viewed in Settings, see **169, SETTINGS**.

Navigation

For further information on Navigation system updates, please visit the **Map Updates** section on www.jaguar.com, or contact a Jaguar Retailer.

FUEL FINDER

When the fuel level falls below a predetermined level, an alert will be triggered, and the Navigation system will search for nearby fuel stations.

Preferred fuel stations can be stored in the **Alerts** menu, see **170, ALERTS**.

The alert can be enable/disabled in Settings, see **169, SETTINGS**.

INSTRUMENT PANEL VIEW

The Instrument panel can be set up to show a view of the navigation map. In this view, essential information (vehicle speed, fuel level, range, etc.) will be displayed as an information bar in the Instrument panel.

The Instrument panel view can be set up in the Instrument panel menu, see **41, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

CONNECTED NAVIGATION

A number of features are available that utilise InControl Pro Services (see **182, INCONTROL PRO SERVICES**). These include:

Note: Unless stated otherwise, the features listed require an internet connection to function.

- My commute. See **171, MY COMMUTE**.
- Real time traffic flow. See **172, REAL TIME TRAFFIC FLOW**.
- Fuel price service. See **172, FUEL PRICES SERVICE**.
- Approach mode. See **172, APPROACH MODE**.

Note: This feature does not need an internet connection to function. However, functionality may be enhanced with an internet connection.

- Online search. See **172, ONLINE SEARCH**.
- Satellite views. See **173, SATELLITE VIEWS**.
- Online routing. See **173, ONLINE ROUTING**.
- Cloud sync. See **173, PROFILES**.
- Door to door routing. See **173, DOOR TO DOOR ROUTING**.
- Sharing. See **173, SHARING**.

Note: User preferences are available in the **Navigation Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. These include settings for managing which features can connect to the internet when on the home network or while roaming.

MY COMMUTE

A commute is a journey with a common start point, a common end point, and at a regular time of day. When **My Commute** is enabled, the Navigation system is designed to recognise your commute.

The following conditions must be met for the commute to be automatically learned:

- The start point must be consistent.
- The start time must be within one hour of the current time.
- The end point must be consistent.

All of the alternative routes that you have used on the same commute are grouped and stored.

Commute mode shows a highlighted route on the map, and uses the learned routes, combined with live traffic information, to calculate the fastest of the previously used routes.

If more than one commute is available, the alternative commutes will be available for selection.

Navigation

The first commute must be set up manually using the My Commute set up wizard in Settings, see **169, SETTINGS**.

Note: Once a commute has been set up, the wizard will no longer be accessible, unless the commute is deleted. Once a commute has been set manually, the Navigation system automatically learns additional regular journeys.

Note: Commute mode shows a map on the Touch screen, but does not give audio guidance.

Note: My Commute can be enabled/disabled in the **Navigation Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu.

REAL TIME TRAFFIC FLOW

Real Time Traffic provides significantly greater amounts of detail, across a far greater road coverage, than conventional broadcast-based traffic information systems, making it easier to plan routes either manually or automatically. The system utilises live feeds, and historical traffic patterns to continuously update traffic information, and enhance the calculation of the selected route.

Note: Historical and internet traffic information are not available in all markets.

Roads are displayed as colour coded in order of traffic flow. The colour codes are:

- Red: Very heavy or stationary traffic.
- Yellow: Heavy traffic.
- Green: Free-flowing traffic.
- Black: Closed road.

Real time traffic can be displayed with a route selected or with no route selected.

A traffic enabled route can be selected; this will display improved and updated routes to your destination, avoiding traffic congestion and delays. This option can also be enabled to possibly find a route around an alerted incident or traffic flow issues, to your destination.

Note: A live internet connection is required to receive updated traffic information during the journey.

FUEL PRICES SERVICE

When petrol station is selected during a POI search, the nearby petrol stations can be sorted according to the price of their fuel. Fuel prices are updated to the vehicle's database from the internet.

Note: Fuel pricing information may not be updated in real time, and cannot be guaranteed to be accurate.

Note: In some markets, a relative price index will be shown instead of live fuel prices.

APPROACH MODE

When the vehicle approaches a selected waypoint or destination, information that may be of use to the driver is displayed. If the vehicle is connected to the internet, a photographic view of the street will be shown, where available.

Note: The image can be rotated by swiping on the image to view a 360° view of the surrounding area.

If the destination or waypoint is not a car park, and parking is available nearby, a Parking icon will appear on the Touch screen.

Touch the icon to show nearby parking, and to update your destination to include the selected parking. The original destination remains active for selection on the smartphone app, to enable guidance from the vehicle to the destination.

ONLINE SEARCH

Provides information, via the internet, for real-time information on Points Of Interest (POIs). An online search can provide significantly more information on POIs than the database on the vehicle.

Navigation

SAFETY CAMERAS

Provides the location of potential accident black spots, or areas that have been identified as a potential danger by the presence of safety cameras.

Note: Safety camera information is not available in all countries.

SATELLITE VIEWS

The Navigation system uses a satellite view of the local area, overlaid with the Navigation system graphics.

Note: If the Satellite view feature is used continuously, it may consume large amounts of mobile data. You may need to check your data allowance is appropriately configured for providing high data services.

ONLINE ROUTING

The selected route is calculated in the cloud and applies any settings that you have selected.

Online routing will take into account the current traffic conditions and the traffic patterns for the relevant time of day, on all routes.

DOOR TO DOOR ROUTING

A smartphone app allows a route to be planned in its entirety from one location to another, using a combination of the phone and the vehicle's Navigation system.

The app will provide guidance via the phone:

- From your current location to your vehicle (including public transport information, if available).
- From your vehicle to the end destination.

Guidance along the driven section of the route is given via the vehicle's Navigation system.

Note: Using the smartphone app does not mandate that the vehicle is used. For example, if the user is close to the location and the vehicle is far away, then the application may suggest an alternative form of transport.

ROUTE PLANNING WEB PORTAL

The Route planning web portal enables a user to search, plan routes and destinations, manage places (POIs, favourites, etc.), using a computer. Destinations, places, and routes can be synchronised with the smartphone app and vehicle's Navigation system.

SHARING

Send a message (via SMS or email) to inform others of your current location, destination, and Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA) (including automatic ETA updates if your journey time is extended).

To share your ETA, touch the ETA banner in the Touch screen information bar (see **173, SHARING**) and follow the onscreen instructions.

PROFILES

A driver profile enables personalised settings and information to be stored and easily switched for each driver.

Driver profiles can be created by signing up for an InControl Navigation account within Settings. Profiles can also be edited, switched and reset (see **173, PROFILES**).

To sign up for an InControl Navigation account, the following will need to be supplied:

- Name.
- Date of birth.
- Country.
- A valid email address.
- Password.



Navigation

Note: Internet connection to the vehicle is required to sign up for an account.

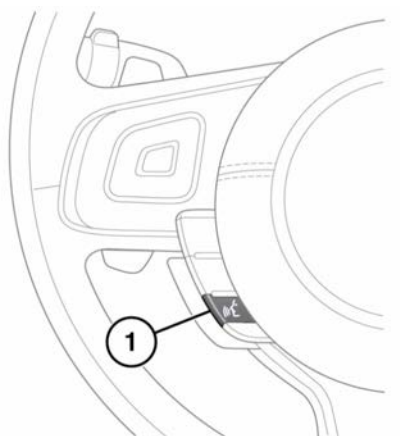
The profile information on the Navigation system can be synchronised with the information stored on other devices via the cloud. Cloud synchronisation can be set up in Settings (see **173, PROFILES**) to be synchronised automatically or manually.

Note: If a profile is deleted, all of the profile information will be unretrievable, with the exception of Favourites, which are also stored in the cloud.

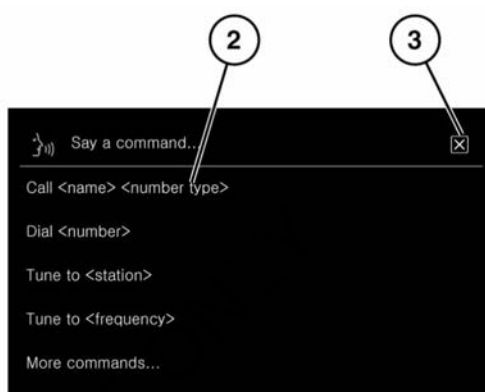
FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

Voice control

USING VOICE CONTROL



E163218



1. Voice button: Press briefly to start a voice session. Press and hold to cancel a voice session.

Note: Audible feedback can be interrupted at any time by just giving the next command.

A voice session will cancel if a higher priority activity or warning appears on the Touch screen, or there is no user input for a sustained length of time.

2. Command list: Appears on the Touch screen, providing feedback and some example commands at each stage of the voice session. Say or select an available command.
When spoken instructions are understood, the system will show a related screen, allowing the voice session to be continued either manually or by voice. Available commands at each stage of the conversation are shown at the top of the screen in the command bar.
3. Touch to cancel the current voice session and continue manually.

The following commands can be spoken at any time to assist in the operation of Voice control:

- Help
- Cancel
- Go back
- Replay.

Note: The Voice system has been designed to recognise a number of languages. However, it cannot be guaranteed that the system will be compatible with every accent group within those languages. Please speak to your Retailer/ Authorised Repairer about testing the Voice system for compatibility with a particular accent group.

VOICE TUTORIAL

To listen to a tutorial detailing the operation of the Voice system:

1. Briefly press the Voice button to start a voice session.
2. Wait for the tone to sound, then say **Voice tutorial**.



Voice control

Alternatively, from the **HOME** screen, select **EXTRA FEATURES** followed by **Voice** and then **Tutorial**. See **176, VOICE SETTINGS**.

The Voice tutorial can be cancelled at any time. Cancel via the displayed pop-up, or by pressing and holding the Voice button.

Alternatively, briefly press the Voice button and say **Cancel**.

VOICETAGS

Voicetags enable the user to personalise the Voice system so that a single name can be used to call-up a phone number, radio station or TV channel.

To add a Voicetag:

1. Briefly press the Voice button to start a voice session.
2. Wait for the tone to sound and say **Store Phone voicetag**, **Store Radio voicetag** or **Store TV voicetag**.
3. For radio and TV, the user must be listening to the station or channel, they wish to create a voicetag for.

Alternatively, Voicetags can be managed via the Touch screen as follows:

1. From the **HOME** screen, select **EXTRA FEATURES**.
2. Select **Voice** and then **Voicetags**.
3. Select the system that the Voicetag is to activate (**Phone**, **Radio** or **TV**).

Follow the on-screen and audible instructions. See **176, VOICE SETTINGS**.

VOICE SETTINGS

The following features can be selected from **Voice**. See **104, EXTRA FEATURES**.

- **Commands:** View the categories and the example voice commands. Select the > icon to view alternative examples of saying the same command.
- **Voicetags:** View the categories. Select a category to manage the Voicetags for the chosen system. See **104, EXTRA FEATURES**.
- **Tutorial:** Select for detailed instructions. Cancel via the displayed pop-up, or by pressing and holding the Voice button. Alternatively, briefly press the Voice button and say **Cancel**. See **175, VOICE TUTORIAL**.

Select **Voice Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu. The following settings are displayed:

- **Voice Command Confirmation:** Select **On/Off**.
- **Voice Feedback:** Select **On/Off**.
- **Voice Recognition:** Select from the list of available languages.
Note: Only available when the system's language is not supported by speech.
- **Feedback Accent:** Select from the list of available accents.

*Note: Only available when the **Voice Recognition** language is UK or US English.*

Alternatively:

- Briefly press the Voice button and say **Voice confirmation on** or **Voice confirmation off**.
- Briefly press the Voice button and say **Voice feedback on** or **Voice feedback off**.

Connectivity

CONNECTIVITY

InControl Connect Pro enables connection to the internet using a high speed 3G modem.

This requires a data-enabled Micro SIM card or an external Wi-Fi network (if in range of a home Wi-Fi network or a public network).

The methods of connection can be made as follows:

- **Hotspot:** Creates a Wi-Fi hotspot in the vehicle to allow the connection of Wi-Fi equipped devices (tablet, laptop, smartphone) to the internet.
- **Wi-Fi:** Allows the vehicle to connect to the internet via a Hotspot.
- **Mobile Data:** Allows the vehicle to connect to the internet via a mobile network with a data-enabled Micro SIM card.

CONNECTIVITY SETTINGS

Connectivity settings can be accessed using the Touch screen. Select **All Settings** via the **SETTINGS** pop-up menu, followed by **Features**. Select **Connectivity**. See **106, SYSTEM SETTINGS**.

The **CONNECTIVITY** screen will display **Hotspot**, **Wi-Fi** and **Mobile Data** settings.

Hotspot:

- Select **ON** to create a vehicle Hotspot. The Hotspot name is determined by the vehicle; this cannot be changed. To set a new or change the password, select **Hotspot Settings** and then press the Refresh icon to generate a new password. Touch **OK** to confirm.

Wi-Fi:

- Select **ON** to connect the vehicle to the internet via a Wi-Fi network. Networks will be displayed in order of known networks first, followed by unknown networks. Both will be listed in order of signal strength.

To connect to an unknown network, select the network and enter the password. If correct, a connection will be made.

To connect to a known network, select the network and touch **Connect**, or to forget this network, touch **Forget**.

To connect to a hidden network, select **Add Network** from the network list. Enter the **Network Name**, **Security Type** and **Password**, and press **Connect**.

Mobile Data:

- **Network provider:** The network provider of the inserted SIM is displayed. To change the APN settings, select the network provider's name, to take you to the **Network provider** screen, and select **Auto** or **Manual**. When **Manual** is selected, add the **Network**, **Username** and **Password**, and select **Connect**.
- **Roaming:** Data roaming is set to **OFF** as default; select to switch **ON**.
- **Data Usage Limit:** The usage limit is set to **OFF** as default. The usage counter shows the total usage for the month; this will reset on the 1st of the month as default. Select **ON** to display the set usage limit.
- **Data Usage Settings:** Select to change the **Usage limit** and **Monthly Reset Date**. The **Reset Counter** can be used to reset the **Current Usage** to zero.
- **SIM PIN:** A PIN can be set or changed for the inserted SIM card.
- **REMEMBER SIM PIN:** Select **ON** to remember or **OFF** to forget the PIN.
- **IMEI Number:** The vehicle's unique IMEI number.

Connectivity

Reset Connectivity

The reset connectivity option is disabled until the connectivity settings are set. When selected, all content will be deleted and reset to the vehicle's default settings.

CONNECTIVITY STATUS ICONS

The icons at the top of the screen display the type of cellular or Wi-Fi connection as follows:



Connecting.



E (edge) mobile network connectivity.



2G mobile network connectivity.



3G mobile network connectivity.



No mobile network connection.



If the vehicle is connected to an external hotspot, a Wi-Fi icon is displayed instead of a Cellular icon.

Note: Depending on the network connectivity, some features and services, including Wi-Fi, may not operate as expected, or at all, unless a sufficiently strong 3G connection is available.

SIM CARD CONNECTION

A Micro SIM card must be inserted into the SIM card reader slot. The SIM card reader slot is located in the centre console cubby box.

The SIM card reader utilizes a 'Micro SIM' interface.



E171585

To install a Micro SIM card, insert the card with the contacts facing up and the shortest end facing out. The card should not be protruding once correctly inserted.



Make sure the SIM card is located correctly in the card holder. Failure to do so may damage the SIM card or SIM card reader.

To remove a SIM card, gently push in and release.

Note: Some mobile network operators may lock SIM cards to operate in specific devices only. You may need to contact your mobile network operator to unlock the SIM card.

InControl

INCONTROL OVERVIEW

This section covers 5 InControl features:

- InControl Protect.
- InControl Remote Premium.
- InControl Secure.
- InControl Pro Services.
- InControl Apps.

For InControl Protect, Remote Premium, Secure and Pro Services, an InControl account must be created. If your Retailer has not pre-registered your account, or if you are not the first owner of the vehicle, then you will need to visit: www.jaguarincontrol.com/owner to create an InControl account. Once the InControl account has been created, follow the on-screen instructions to connect the InControl account to the vehicle and to activate the services on the vehicle.

Selected Pro Services also require an InControl Navigation Account which can be created by visiting the InControl section of www.jaguar.com.

Note: 100% mobile network connectivity cannot be guaranteed in all locations.

Note: It is the account owner's responsibility to remove the vehicle from their InControl account when ownership of the vehicle is transferred.

INCONTROL PROTECT

InControl Protect comprises the following:

- The InControl Remote Essentials Smartphone App.
- A Jaguar Assistance Breakdown Call feature.
- A Jaguar SOS Emergency Call feature.

InControl Remote Essentials

The InControl Remote Essentials Smartphone App has a number of different features:

- **Vehicle Status:** Shows the status of the vehicle, current fuel level, range, odometer reading, and a vehicle locator display to help find the last parked location of the vehicle. The current security status of the vehicle and any current vehicle warnings will also be displayed. Touch the warning on the screen for further information.
- **Vehicle Security:** Displays the open/closed status of all the doors/windows and the current alarm setting.
- **Journeys:** Displays the most recent journeys completed in the vehicle.
Note: This feature can be enabled/disabled via the InControl **Settings** screen.
Note: Stored journeys can be viewed, deleted, or downloaded as a .csv file to assist with business expenses.
- **Assistance:** Displays the vehicle's VIN and registration number. This screen will also allow for direct calls to be made to Jaguar Assistance (in the event of a breakdown) and the Tracking Call Centre (in the event of a vehicle theft).
- **Settings:** Allows the vehicle's security status and journey recording to be switched on/off. It also allows access to your InControl account.

Jaguar Assistance Breakdown Call



Located in the overhead console. See **280, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

In the event of a breakdown, press and release the button cover to reveal the button. The button will be illuminated by a white LED. Press the button for 2 seconds to make a direct call to Jaguar Assistance. Also, the vehicle's details and the location will automatically be supplied to them.

InControl

When a call is initiated, the button will flash amber and will be constantly illuminated amber during the call.

Push the button cover back into place, after use.

Jaguar SOS Emergency Call



Located in the overhead console.
See **280, DRIVER CONTROLS**.

Note: The Jaguar SOS Emergency Call feature should only be used in the event of a severe accident, or in the event that personal safety or security is at risk.

Press and release the button cover to reveal the button. The button will be illuminated by a red LED. Press the button for 2 seconds to make a direct call to the emergency services. Also, the vehicle's details and the location will automatically be supplied to them.

When a call is initiated, the button will flash amber. The button will be constantly illuminated amber during a call.

Push the button cover back into place, after use.

Note: In the event that a severe crash is detected, the Jaguar SOS Emergency Call will be automatically triggered.

Note: If the vehicle is travelling in a different country, the Jaguar SOS Emergency Call will still connect, however, the vehicle's location and the vehicle's details may not be automatically sent.

This feature has 2 backup batteries that will maintain full system operation, in the event that the vehicle's battery is disconnected or disabled.

Note: The backup batteries will be maintained as part of the vehicle's servicing schedule, as carried out by a Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

If a fault is detected with the Jaguar SOS Emergency Call system, then the **SOS Limited** message will be displayed in the Message centre. If this occurs, the vehicle can still be driven, but consult a Retailer/Authorised Repairer at the earliest opportunity.

If the message **SOS Not Available** is displayed, then a Retailer/Authorised Repairer visit is only required if the vehicle is in an area with known good coverage, or the message persists in all locations.

INCONTROL REMOTE PREMIUM

The InControl Remote Premium Smartphone App has a number of extra features, in addition to the InControl Remote Essentials Smartphone App:

- The **Vehicle Status** screen will also display the **Beep & Flash** feature. Touch this icon to help locate the vehicle by operating the vehicle's exterior lamps and a short audible horn alert will also sound.

Note: It is the responsibility of the driver to comply with all regulations in force regarding the use of vehicle horns.

- The **Vehicle Security** screen will allow the vehicle to be locked/unlocked. This screen will also display the vehicle's alarm status. e.g., set or not set.

Note: Regardless of which screen is currently displayed, if the vehicle's alarm is sounding, then a pop-up screen will appear with an option to reset the alarm. The alarm may also be reset via the **Vehicle Security** screen.

Note: It remains the responsibility of the driver to know the location of the vehicle and to make sure that the vehicle is secured.

InControl

- The **Remote Climate** screen allows the engine to be started remotely (for vehicles with an automatic transmission), and to run for up to 30 minutes to provide a comfortable temperature inside the cabin in advance of the driver entering the vehicle.

Remote climate will not function if any of the following conditions exist:

- The vehicle's fuel level is low.
- The vehicle's battery charge level is low.
- The vehicle is not locked.
- A window, door, bonnet, or the luggage compartment is open.
- The engine has been manually started.
- A system error with any required vehicle system.
- A theft has been detected.
- The vehicle's alarm is sounding.
- A crash event has been detected.
- The hazard warning lamps are switched on.
- The automatic transmission is not in Park (P).
- The brake pedal is pressed.

Note: Some markets may prohibit the use of a remote engine start. It remains the responsibility of the driver to know if this function can legally be used.

Note: This feature is also available for vehicles fitted with a Timed climate system. If the vehicle configuration (e.g., transmission or engine variant) does not support a remote engine start, or if the vehicle originated in a market with legal restrictions on a remote engine start, then the Timed climate system may be used to support the cabin pre-conditioning.

- **Wake Up Timer:** The InControl Remote system on the vehicle, will shut down if the vehicle is not driven for 4 days. This is to conserve battery power. If, for example, you are on vacation or away on a business trip, you can use the **Wake Up Timer** on the Smartphone App. This feature will wake up the InControl Remote system on the selected date. Any date within a 30 day period can be chosen.

Note: Note: The **Wake Up Timer** cannot be set once the InControl Remote system has shut down. Once the **Wake Up Timer** is set, the InControl Remote system will shut down on the second day after the car was last driven, to preserve battery power for wake up.

The InControl Remote Smartphone App can be downloaded for Apple's iPhone from the Apple App Store, or for Android phones, from Google Play.

Note: The availability and functionality of the InControl Remote Premium Smartphone App features will depend on the specification of the vehicle and the market.

For more information, visit the **InControl** section of the www.jaguar.com website.

INCONTROL SECURE

InControl Secure provides a stolen vehicle tracking service. In the event that the vehicle has been tampered with, or moved without your consent, you will be contacted by the InControl Secure operating centre. Alternatively, use the InControl Remote Smartphone App, or the phone number on the InControl website, to contact the InControl Secure operating centre.

When the vehicle is being serviced or repaired, **Service Mode** must be enabled.

When the vehicle is being transported, **Transport Mode** must be enabled.

InControl

This can be done by using the InControl Remote Smartphone App, or via the InControl website. This will prevent automatic theft alerts being raised while the vehicle is being serviced.

Note: For further information, visit the **InControl** section of the www.jaguar.com website.

INCONTROL PRO SERVICES

InControl LIVE

InControl LIVE allows features to be installed directly to the infotainment system.

Examples may include, Weather, Flight Tracker and News Feeds.

Note: For further information, visit the **InControl** section of the www.jaguar.com website.

Connected Navigation

A selection of InControl Pro Services are available for use with the Navigation system. To access certain features, an InControl Navigation Account is required; you will need to visit the **InControl** section of www.jaguar.com to create an account.

- Real Time traffic flow
- Fuel Price Service
- Parking Service
- Online Search
- Safety Cameras
- Satellite views
- Street views
- Online routing
- Cloud Sync
- Door to Door Routing
- Sharing of ETA, places and destination.

For further information, see **162, THE NAVIGATION SYSTEM**.

The availability of LIVE services and features may vary by market. Selected LIVE services and features require an InControl Account, which can be created by visiting www.jaguar.com.

InControl Pro Services require a suitable, data-enabled Micro SIM to be fitted to the vehicle. The SIM slot can be found in the USB panel located in the centre console cubby box.

Note: If the **Satellite View** feature is used continuously, it may consume large amounts of mobile data. You may need to check your data allowance is appropriately configured for providing high data services.

INCONTROL APPS

InControl Apps allows you to operate a number of smartphone apps through the vehicle's Touch screen.

Before using InControl Apps, you will need to download the InControl Apps Smartphone App. For Apple's iPhone®, this can be downloaded from the Apple App Store. For Android phones, this can be downloaded from Google Play.

Note: Not all smartphones are compatible with InControl Apps. Check the list of compatible smartphones and supported Apps in the **InControl** section of www.jaguar.com.



E171596

To initiate InControl Apps, connect your smartphone's USB cable to the vehicle's USB socket, located in the centre console cubby box. See **119, CONNECTING A MEDIA DEVICE**.

Once connected, any available apps will appear on the vehicle's Touch screen. You can now open and operate those apps using the Touch screen in the same way as your smartphone.

Note: *Smartphone Apps is not suitable for use while driving, for example, gaming apps will not appear on the Touch screen while the vehicle is moving.*

Note: *To establish a connection to the vehicle, the smartphone must be connected to the USB socket and the **HOME** screen displayed.*

Note: *Apple and iPhone are registered trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.*

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

Fuel and refuelling

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

-  **Do not smoke, use a naked flame, or cause sparks while refuelling. The resulting fire and explosion may cause serious injury or death.**
-  **Avoid exposing the fuel gases to any potential sources of ignition as the resulting fire and explosion may cause serious injuries and/or death.**
-  **Switch off the engine when refuelling.**
-  **Switch off any personal electronic devices, such as mobile phones or music players, when refuelling.**

PETROL ENGINED VEHICLES

-  Use high quality fuel that meets the specification defined by EN228 (or the national equivalent).
-  Do not use leaded fuels, fuels with lead substitutes (e.g. manganese-based), or fuel additives, as these may adversely affect the emissions control systems, and may affect warranty coverage.
-  Fuel system cleaning agents should not be used, unless approved by the vehicle manufacturer.

OCTANE RATING

V6 and V8 petrol vehicles

It is recommended to use a premium unleaded fuel, with a minimum octane rating of 95 RON to contribute to optimum performance, fuel economy and driveability.

I4 petrol engines

This vehicle requires the use of premium unleaded fuel with a minimum octane rating of 95 RON to contribute to optimum performance, fuel economy and driveability.

If premium unleaded fuel is not available, you may use unleaded fuel with a lower octane rating, down to a minimum of 91 RON, but this may reduce engine performance, increase fuel consumption, cause an audible engine knock and other driveability problems.

-  Do not use fuels with an octane rating lower than 91 RON as severe engine damage may occur.
-  Use high quality fuel that meets the specification defined by EN228 (or the national equivalent).

If a heavy persistent engine knock is detected, even when using fuel to the recommended octane rating, or if engine knock is detected while holding a steady speed on level roads, consult a Retailer/Authorised Repairer to have the problem corrected. Failure to do so is misuse of the vehicle, for which the vehicle manufacturer is not responsible.

Note: *An occasional light engine knock when accelerating or climbing hills is acceptable.*

ETHANOL

Fuels containing up to 10% ethanol (E5 and E10) may be used.

-  This vehicle is not suitable for use with fuels containing more than 10% ethanol.
-  Do not use E85 fuels (85% ethanol content), as serious engine and fuel system damage will occur.

Make sure that the fuel has octane ratings no lower than those recommended for unleaded fuel. Most drivers will not notice any operating difference with fuel containing ethanol. If a difference is detected, the use of conventional unleaded fuel should be resumed.

Fuel and refuelling

METHANOL

- ⚠ Wherever possible, avoid using fuels containing methanol.

Use of fuels containing methanol may cause serious engine and fuel system damage, which may not be covered under warranty.

METHYL TERTIARY BUTYL ETHER (MTBE)

Unleaded fuel containing an oxygenate known as MTBE can be used provided that the ratio of MTBE to conventional fuel does not exceed 15%. MTBE is an Ether based compound derived from Petroleum, which has been specified by several refiners as the substance to enhance the Octane rating of fuel.

DIESEL ENGINED VEHICLES

Use only high quality diesel fuel in accordance with European Standard EN590 or equivalent.

- ⚠ These vehicles are capable of running with up to a 7% blend of bio-diesel, in accordance with European Standard EN590. It is not recommended to use a higher blend of bio-diesel.

The quality and specification of diesel fuel varies significantly, dependent on the geographical location. It is recommended to use a premium fuel, or the highest quality available fuel.

High quality fuel promotes a longer life for the engine components. Lower grade fuel contains higher levels of sulphur, which is detrimental to engine components. If low quality fuel is used, light coloured smoke may be evident at the exhaust.

Prolonged use of additives is not recommended. Do not add paraffin or petrol to diesel fuels.

- ⚠ If you inadvertently fill your vehicle with petrol instead of diesel, do not attempt to start the engine. Contact a Retailer/ Authorised Repairer immediately.

- ⚠ The vehicle manufacturer can accept no responsibility for any damage caused by running the vehicle with fuel other than those stipulated.

SULPHUR CONTENT

- ⚠ If this vehicle is fitted with a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) exhaust after treatment system, the maximum sulphur content of the fuel must not exceed 0.005% (50 parts per million), in accordance with EN590-EU4, or World Wide Fuel Charter (WWFC) Cat 3.

- ⚠ The sulphur content of diesel fuel used in vehicles not fitted with a DPF, should not exceed 0.3% (3 000 parts per million).

In some countries, diesel fuel will contain higher levels of sulphur, which will require reduced service intervals to reduce the effects on the engine and the exhaust after treatment components. If in doubt contact a Retailer/ Authorised Repairer for advice.

- ⚠ Using an incorrect specification of fuel will cause serious damage to the engine and/or the exhaust after treatment system, which may not be covered by the vehicle's warranty. If in doubt, contact a Retailer/Authorised Repairer for advice.

DIESEL EXHAUST FLUID (DEF)

In order to comply with exhaust emissions requirements, some vehicles with diesel engines are fitted with a reservoir containing Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF). DEF is also known as AdBlue, AUS 32 and ARLA 32.

Fuel and refuelling

Note: It is a legal requirement that the DEF system is used correctly, as detailed in this handbook. It may be a criminal offence to run the vehicle when it is not consuming the correct specification of DEF.

The distance until the next DEF refill, can be viewed via the service menu in the Instrument panel. See **41, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

DEF consumption can vary greatly dependent on driving style and conditions, but the average rate of consumption is approximately 1 litre for every 1 600 kilometres.

Note: When the DEF level becomes low, an appropriate message will be displayed in the Message centre. It is recommended to contact a Retailer/Authorised Repairer to arrange a DEF refill, at the earliest opportunity.

The Message centre will display a distance countdown, when the DEF level becomes too low. The DEF should be topped up before the distance range falls to zero. Failure to do so, will result in the vehicle failing to start.

DEF can be added to the reservoir by using the top-up procedure; however, a full system refill is still recommended at the earliest opportunity.

Two standard sized non-drip refill bottles, each containing 1.89 litres of fluid, is the minimum amount required to restart the engine. Refill bottles are available from a Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

⚠ When refilling, make sure that the correct specification of DEF is used. See **245, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**. Use of the incorrect fluid could result in serious damage to the vehicle. Do not start the engine. Contact a Retailer/Authorised Repairer immediately.

⚠ DEF can smell unpleasant and stain clothing or upholstery. Take care not to spill the fluid when performing a top-up procedure. In the event of spillage, rinse immediately with clean water.

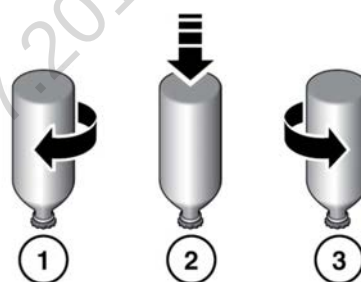
⚠ **Read the label for safety precautions when using DEF.**

⚠ **DEF must be kept out of the reach of children.**

⚠ DEF must be stored in the original container, in a cool, dry, and well-ventilated area. Observe the manufacturer's storage and handling recommendations.

To perform a DEF top-up procedure:

Locate the DEF reservoir. See **203, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS**. Remove the reservoir filler cap by turning counter-clockwise.



E163458

1. Place the refill bottle over the reservoir filler cap aperture and turn clockwise, until it is locked into position.
2. Press the base of the refill bottle, until all of the fluid has completely drained into the reservoir.
3. Turn the refill bottle counter-clockwise and remove.
4. Repeat the procedure with the second refill bottle.

Fuel and refuelling

5. Replace the reservoir filler cap and continually turn clockwise until hand tight.

Note: In extremely low temperatures, below -10°C , DEF may freeze in the reservoir; making refilling difficult. It is recommended to take the vehicle into a warmer environment, e.g., a garage, to raise the ambient temperature, in order to thaw the DEF, before attempting to top-up. In these conditions, it may take up to 1 hour of driving before the low DEF message will extinguish.

Note: When starting and stopping the engine, you may hear the DEF pumps initiating and shutting down. This is normal operation, and no cause for concern.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

-  Avoid running out of fuel!

If the vehicle does run out of fuel, a minimum of 4 litres will be required to restart the engine. The vehicle should be left with the ignition on for 5 minutes after refuelling before attempting to restart the engine.

Note: If the vehicle does run out of fuel, seeking qualified assistance is advisable.

WATER IN FUEL

-  If the warning **WATER IN FUEL** is displayed in the Message centre, an excessive amount of water has collected in the fuel filter bowl. Seek assistance from a Retailer/Authorised Repairer to have the filter drained as soon as possible

DIESEL ENGINES

Vehicles with diesel engines are equipped with a system to prevent the fuel tank from emptying completely, which would then draw air into the fuel system. When the fuel reaches a minimum level, the system will activate a reduced power mode (i.e. the engine will not run properly). This will be followed by the engine stopping in approximately 1.6 km.

This feature prevents the fuel system from running dry, which could cause damage to the vehicle. If the fuel gauge indicates a low fuel level, or the low fuel warning lamp illuminates (see **46, LOW FUEL WARNING (AMBER)**), the fuel tank should be refuelled as soon as possible at the next filling station with at least 4 litres of fuel.

If the system protection function has activated, the vehicle must be refuelled and then restarted using the following procedure:

1. With the brake pedal pressed, press and hold the engine stop/start button (see **280, DRIVER CONTROLS**) and crank the engine for 5 seconds.
2. Release the stop/start button.
3. With the brake pedal pressed, press and release the stop/start button to crank the engine. The engine should start within approximately 5 seconds.

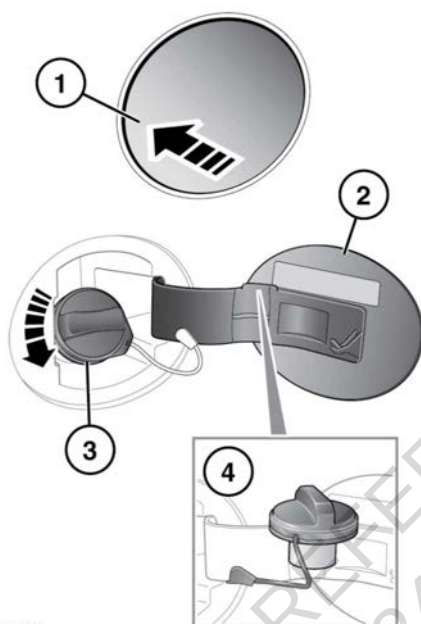
Note: If the engine does not start, pause for 10 seconds with the ignition in convenience mode before repeating the procedure from the beginning.

-  Do not crank the engine for longer than 30 seconds continuously.

Fuel and refuelling

FUEL FILLER FLAP

-  Take note of all warnings and instruction given on the label affixed to the inside of the fuel filler flap.



E134357

The vehicle must be unlocked using the Smart key before the fuel filler flap can be opened.

1. Press and release the rear of the flap to unlatch.
2. Pull the flap open. The label on the inside of the flap indicates the correct fuel for the vehicle.
3. Turn the cap counter-clockwise to undo.
4. Stow the cap on the lip provided on the top of the hinge arm, as shown.

When replacing the cap, turn it clockwise until the ratchet clicks.

To close the filler flap, push the flap until it is securely latched.

Note: The filler flap will only be locked closed when the vehicle is centrally locked.

FUEL FILLER

-  When refuelling ensure that all windows, doors, and sunroof are fully closed, particularly if young children or animals are in the vehicle.
-  Do not attempt to fill the tank to its maximum capacity. If the vehicle is to be parked on a slope, in direct sunlight or high ambient temperature, expansion of the fuel could cause spillage.
-  Check the fuel pump information carefully to make sure that you are putting the correct fuel into the vehicle.
-  If the vehicle is filled with incorrect fuel, it is essential that you seek qualified assistance before you start the engine.

Fuel station pumps are equipped with automatic cut-off sensing to avoid fuel spillage. Make sure that the correct fuel type nozzle is fully inserted into the filler neck and fill the tank slowly until the filler nozzle automatically cuts off the supply. Do not attempt to fill the tank beyond this point.

Note: Filling station pumps used for diesel commercial vehicles deliver fuel at a higher rate than normal. The higher fill rate can cause premature cut-off and may cause fuel spillage. Therefore, it is recommended that only standard light vehicle pumps are used.

DIESEL MISFUELLING PROTECTION DEVICE

-  When the misfuelling device is activated it may cause fuel to be discharged from the filler neck.

Fuel and refuelling

Note: It is the driver's responsibility to fill the vehicle with the correct fuel. The diesel misfuel protection device only reduces the risk of filling the vehicle with incorrect fuel.

If the narrow filler nozzle fitted to pumps delivering unleaded petrol is fully inserted into the filler neck, the misfuel protection device will activate.

Note: The filler spout on some fuel cans and older fuel pumps may trigger the misfuelling device.

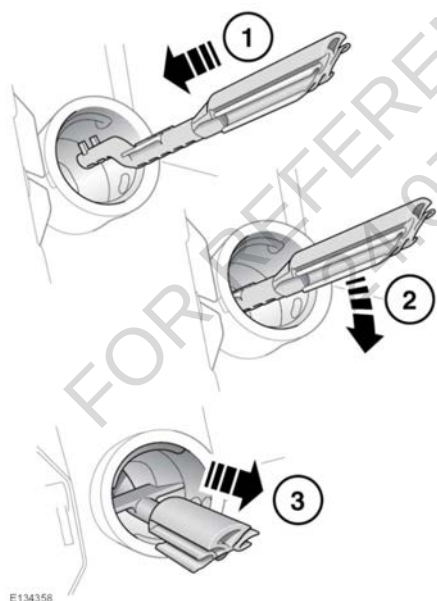
When activated the yellow protection device will be visible inside the filler neck. It will prevent fuel flow into the tank. Before fuelling can continue with the correct fuel the device will need to be reset.

1. Insert the reset tool with the teeth uppermost, as far as it will go into the filler neck.
2. Locate the teeth by pushing down the top of the reset tool.
3. With the top of the tool pressed down and the teeth engaged, slowly pull the tool out of the filler neck to reset the device.

⚠ Do not twist the device, once the teeth have engaged.

Note: When reset, the yellow part of the protection device should no longer be visible in the filler neck.

Replace the reset tool in position on the battery restraining bar.



E134358

The reset tool is stored in the luggage compartment clipped onto the battery retaining bar.

To reset the misfuelling device:

FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Avoid the risk of running out of fuel and never intentionally drive the vehicle when the fuel gauge indicates that the tank is empty. When refuelling your vehicle after the fuel gauge reads empty, you may not be able to add the fuel quantity shown below, as there will be a small reserve remaining in the tank.

Total tank capacity (usable):	
Petrol engines	80 litres (18 gallons)
Diesel engines	77 litres (17 gallons)
Fill capacity (when fuel gauge reads empty):	
Petrol engines	74 litres (16.3 gallons)
Diesel engines	68 litres (15 gallons)

Fuel and refuelling

FUEL CONSUMPTION

The fuel consumption figures shown in the following table, have been calculated using a standard testing procedure (the new EC test procedure from Directive 99/100/EC), and produced in accordance with The Passenger Car Fuel Consumption (Amendment) Order 1996.

Under normal use, a vehicle's actual fuel consumption figures may differ from those achieved through the test procedure, depending on driving technique, road and traffic conditions, environmental factors, vehicle load and condition.

Variant	Urban l/100 km (mpg)	Extra-urban l/100 km (mpg)	Combined l/100 km (mpg)	CO ₂ emissions g/km
3.0L Diesel with Stop/Start				
Pirelli 19 inch Tyre - Standard/Long wheelbase	7.0 (40.4)	5.2 (54.3)	5.7 (49.6)	149
Continental 20 inch Tyre - Standard/Long wheelbase	7.1 (39.8)	5.2 (54.3)	5.9 (48.0)	155
Dunlop 20 inch Tyre - Standard/Long wheelbase	7.5 (37.7)	5.3 (53.3)	6.1 (46.3)	159
2.0L Petrol				
Standard wheelbase	13.0 (21.7)	6.7 (42.2)	9.0 (31.4)	213
Long wheelbase	13.0 (21.7)	6.7 (42.2)	9.0 (31.4)	213
2.0L Petrol with Stop/Start				
Standard wheelbase	11.4 (24.8)	6.7 (42.2)	8.4 (33.6)	199
Long wheelbase	11.4 (24.8)	6.7 (42.2)	8.4 (33.6)	199
3.0L Petrol - Supercharged				
Standard wheelbase	13.8 (20.5)	7.3 (38.7)	9.7 (29.1)	226
Long wheelbase	13.8 (20.5)	7.3 (38.7)	9.7 (29.1)	226
3.0L Petrol - Supercharged with Stop/Start				

Fuel and refuelling

Variant	Urban l/100 km (mpg)	Extra-urban l/100 km (mpg)	Combined l/100 km (mpg)	CO ₂ emissions g/km
Standard wheelbase	12.5 (22.6)	7.1 (39.8)	9.1 (31.0)	211
Long wheelbase	12.5 (22.6)	7.1 (39.8)	9.1 (31.0)	211
3.0L Petrol - Supercharged - All wheel drive				
Standard wheelbase	15.2 (18.6)	7.8 (36.2)	10.5 (26.9)	250
Long wheelbase	15.2 (18.6)	7.8 (36.2)	10.5 (26.9)	250
3.0L Petrol - Supercharged - with All wheel drive and Stop/Start				
Standard wheelbase	13.6 (20.8)	7.6 (37.2)	9.8 (28.8)	234
Long wheelbase	13.6 (20.8)	7.6 (37.2)	9.8 (28.8)	234
5.0L Petrol - Supercharged with Stop/Start				
Standard wheelbase	16.2 (17.4)	8.2 (34.5)	11.1 (25.5)	264
Long wheelbase	16.2 (17.4)	8.2 (34.5)	11.1 (25.5)	264
5.0L Petrol - Supercharged Super Sport / XJ-R				
Standard wheelbase	17.9 (15.8)	8.5 (33.2)	11.9 (23.7)	283
Long wheelbase	17.9 (15.8)	8.5 (33.2)	11.9 (23.7)	283
5.0L Petrol - Supercharged Super Sport / XJ-R with Stop/Start				
Standard wheelbase	16.2 (17.4)	8.2 (34.5)	11.1 (25.5)	264
Long wheelbase	16.2 (17.4)	8.2 (34.5)	11.1 (25.5)	264

Fuel and refuelling

URBAN CYCLE

The urban test cycle is carried out from a cold start and consists of a series of accelerations, decelerations and periods of steady speed driving and engine idling. The maximum speed attained during the test is 50 km/h (30 mph) with an average speed of 19 km/h (12 mph).

EXTRA-URBAN CYCLE

The extra-urban test cycle is carried out immediately after the urban test. Approximately half of the test comprises steady-speed driving, while the remainder consists of a series of accelerations, decelerations and engine idling. The maximum test speed is 120 km/h (75 mph) and the average speed 63 km/h (39 mph). The test is carried out over a distance of 7 km (4.3 miles).

COMBINED

The combined figure is an average of the urban and extra-urban test cycle results, which has been weighted to take account of the different distances covered during the two tests.



For additional information on fuel consumption figures and exhaust emissions, visit the Vehicle Certification Agency (VCA) website at:

<http://www.vcacarfueldata.org.uk/>

Maintenance

RUNNING-IN

This vehicle is built using high-precision manufacturing methods, but the moving parts of the engine must still bed-in relative to one another. The process occurs mainly in the first 3 000 km (2 000 miles) of operation.

During this Running-in period of 3 000 km (2 000 miles) you should:

- Avoid frequent cold starts followed by short-distance driving.
- Preferably take longer trips.
- Do not use full throttle during starts and normal driving.
- Avoid continuous operation at high engine speed and abrupt stops.
- Do not participate in track days, sports driving schools, or similar.
In addition, specifically up to 2 000 km (1 200 miles):
- Drive at varying engine and road speeds, but do not exceed an engine speed of 4 500 rpm (revolutions per minute) and a road speed of 170 km/h (105 mph).

From 2 000 km (1 200 miles) to 3 000 km (2 000 miles):

- Engine and road speeds can be increased gradually.
- Engine speeds in excess of 5 000 rpm should only be used briefly e.g., when overtaking.

At all times, not just during the Running-in period:

- Do not exceed 4 000 rpm until the engine has reached full operating temperature.
- Avoid labouring the engine by operating the engine in too high a gear at low speeds.

PARTS AND ACCESSORIES



Do not fit non-approved parts and accessories or carry out non-approved alterations or conversions.



Your vehicle is not designed for use with a roof rack. Do not fit a roof rack to the vehicle, as damage may result.

AIRBAG SYSTEM



The components that make up the airbag system are sensitive to electrical or physical interference, either of which could easily damage the system and cause inadvertent operation or a malfunction of the airbag module.

To prevent malfunction of the airbag system always consult your retailer/Authorised Repairer before fitting any of the following:

- Electronic equipment such as a mobile phone, two-way radio or in-car entertainment system.
- Accessories attached to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification to the front of the vehicle.
- Any modification involving the removal or repair of any wiring or component in the vicinity of any of the airbag system components, including the steering wheel, steering column, pillar trim, roof lining, door trim, instrument or fascia panels.
- Any modification to the fascia panels or steering wheel.

ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM



No modifications or additions should be made to the anti-theft system. Such changes could cause the system to malfunction.

Maintenance

OWNER MAINTENANCE



Any significant or sudden drop in fluid levels, or uneven tyre wear, should be reported to a qualified technician without delay.

In addition to the routine services and inspections, a number of simple checks must be carried out more frequently. These checks can be carried out by the owner and advice is given on the pages that follow.

DAILY CHECKS

- Operation of lamps, horn, direction indicators, wipers, washers and warning indicators.
- Operation of seat belts and brakes.
- Look for fluid deposits underneath the vehicle that might indicate a leak. Condensation drips from the air conditioning are normal.

WEEKLY CHECKS

- Engine oil level.
- Engine coolant level.
- Brake fluid level.
- Power steering fluid level.
- Screen washer fluid level.
- Tyre pressures and condition.
- Operate air conditioning.

Note: The engine oil level should be checked more frequently if the vehicle is driven for prolonged periods at high speeds.

EXHAUST FILTER

Diesel vehicles equipped with a Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) have more efficient emissions control. The particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the exhaust filter during normal driving.

Cleaning of the exhaust filter, also known as regeneration, occurs automatically approximately every 300-900 km depending on driving conditions, and requires the engine to reach normal operating temperature.

This self-cleaning takes place when the vehicle is driven steadily at speeds between 60 km/h to 112 km/h (40 mph to 70 mph). This process normally takes 10-20 minutes. It is possible that the self-cleaning will occur at lower vehicle speeds, but the process may take a little longer at a 50 km/h (30 mph) average speed.

Exhaust filter self-cleaning

Some driving conditions (e.g., frequently driving short distances, in slow-moving traffic, or in cold weather) may not provide sufficient opportunity to begin the exhaust filter self-cleaning automatically. When this occurs, a warning icon is displayed in the message centre, depending on status, as follows:

- **Amber:** Exhaust filter self-cleaning is required. Driving above 60 km/h (40 mph) for 20 minutes should clean the filter.

Note: Failure to follow the above driving approach to enable filter self-cleaning, may result in reduced vehicle performance. The amber exhaust filter icon will eventually be replaced by a red exhaust filter icon, and the filter may need to be replaced.

- **Red:** The exhaust filter is full; contact a Retailer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

Note: A small increase in fuel consumption may be noticed temporarily during exhaust filter self-cleaning.

Note: If diesel fuel with high sulphur content is used regularly, the exhaust may emit a cloud of smoke at the start of the self-cleaning process. This is the sulphur deposit being burnt off and is no cause for concern. If possible, only use low sulphur diesel fuel.

Maintenance

ARDUOUS DRIVING CONDITIONS

When a vehicle is operated in severe or arduous conditions, more frequent attention must be paid to the servicing requirements. Refer to your Service book for further details, this is supplied in the vehicle's literature pack, or contact a Retailer/Authorised Repairer for advice.

SAFETY IN THE GARAGE

-  If the vehicle has been driven recently, do not touch exhaust and cooling system components until the engine has cooled.
-  Never leave the engine running in an unventilated area.
-  Do not work beneath the vehicle with a jack as the only means of support.
-  Keep your hands and clothing away from drive belts, pulleys and fans. Some fans may continue to operate after the engine has stopped.
-  Remove metal wrist bands and jewellery, before working in the engine compartment.
-  Do not touch electrical leads or components while the engine is running, or with the starter switch turned on.
-  Do not allow tools or metal parts of the vehicle to make contact with the battery leads or terminals.

FUEL SYSTEM

-  Under no circumstances should any part of the fuel system be dismantled or replaced by anyone other than a suitably qualified vehicle technician.
-  Ensure sparks and naked lights are kept away from the engine compartment.



Wear protective clothing, including, where practicable, gloves made from an impervious material.

USED ENGINE OIL



Prolonged contact with engine oil may cause serious skin disorders, including dermatitis and cancer of the skin. Always wash thoroughly after contact.

OPENING THE BONNET



Do not attempt to open the bonnet if the pedestrian protection system has deployed.



E132655

1. Pull the bonnet release handle located in the left-side front footwell.
2. Lift the bonnet safety catch lever located below the centre point of the bonnet, and raise the bonnet.

CLOSING THE BONNET

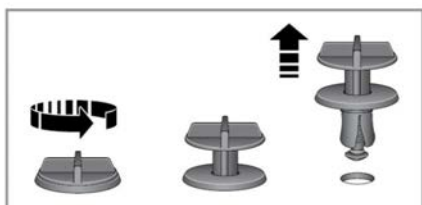


Do not drive with the bonnet retained by the safety catch alone.

Maintenance

1. Lower the bonnet until the safety catch engages. Using both hands, press the bonnet down until the catches click.
2. Check that both catches are fully engaged by attempting to lift both sides of the front edge of the bonnet. This should be free from all movement.

UNDER BONNET COVERS - REMOVAL



E155249

1. Release and remove the turnbuckle clips securing the cover.
2. Lift the edge of the cover and slide to remove.

UNDER BONNET COVERS - REFITTING



Before refitting the underbonnet cover, make sure that no pipes, cables or other items, have been trapped between the cover and casing.

1. Place the cover over the casing, ensuring all holes are aligned.
2. Push the cover down firmly, insert and fasten the turnbuckle clips.

UNBLOCKING WASHER JETS



Do not operate the washer jets during adjustment. Windscreen washer fluid may cause irritation to the eyes and skin. Always read and observe the washer fluid manufacturers instructions.

If a washer jet becomes blocked, use a thin strand of wire to unblock the jet by inserting the wire into the jet. Make sure that the wire is completely removed after unblocking.

CHANGING A BULB



Always replace bulbs with the correct type and specification. If you are in any doubt contact your Retailer/Authorised Repairer for advice.

XENON LAMPS



Replacement or maintenance of Xenon lamps should only be carried out by suitably qualified personnel.



High voltage is required to ignite the Xenon lamps.



Xenon lamp units operate at a very high temperature. Make sure that the lamp units have cooled before attempting to touch them.

HEADLAMP BULB REPLACEMENT



Removal of the headlamp unit should only be attempted by a qualified technician. If in doubt, consult your Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

Maintenance

REAR LAMP REMOVAL

- ⓘ Removal of the rear lamp unit should only be attempted by a qualified technician. If in doubt, consult your Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

HIGH LEVEL BRAKE LAMP REPLACEMENT

- ⓘ Removal of this lamp unit should only be attempted by a qualified technician. If in doubt, consult your Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

WIPERS SERVICE POSITION

Note: The Smart key must remain in the vehicle while the wiper blades are replaced.

- ⓘ To prevent damage to the bonnet, make sure that the wiper arms are in the 'service' position before lifting the wiper blades away from the windscreen.

Before changing a wiper blade, the wiper arms must be set in the 'service' position as follows:

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off.
2. Switch the ignition on, then off again.
3. Immediately pull the wiper/washer control towards the driver (as if to command a single wipe), hold this position while switching the ignition on again. The wipers will move to their service position.
4. When the new parts have been fitted, switch the ignition off. This will return the wipers to the park position.

Note: Fit only replacement wiper blades that are identical to the original specification.

SUNROOF RESET

If the battery is disconnected, or the power supply is interrupted, while the sunroof is partially open it will need to be reset.

Once the power supply is restored, reset the sunroof as follows:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Fully close the sunroof.
3. Press the front of the sunroof switch, and hold for 45 seconds.
4. After 45 seconds the sunroof will begin to move. Keep the front of the switch pressed until the sunroof and the roof blinds have fully opened, then closed.
5. Once the open/close cycle has completed and the sunroof has stopped moving, release the switch.

The sunroof can now be operated as normal.

WINDOW RESET

The windows will need to be reset if the battery is disconnected, becomes discharged, or the power supply is interrupted.

Once the power supply is restored, reset the windows, as follows:

1. Make sure that the engine is running.
2. Close the window fully, and release the switch.
3. Lift the switch to the close position and hold for 2 seconds.
4. Release the switch.
5. Repeat the lift and release procedure (steps 3 and 4) twice more.
6. Open the window fully.
7. Lift and release the switch to check the One-touch window operation, see **61, ONE-TOUCH WINDOW OPERATION**.
8. Repeat the procedure on each window.

Maintenance

Note: It is advisable to have the engine running while resetting the windows, to make sure that a minimum of 12 volts is available at all times.

SIDE WINDOW BLIND RESET

Rear door electric sun blinds

Note: Make sure that the One-touch window operation is functional, (see **61, ONE-TOUCH WINDOW OPERATION**) and the window is fully closed.

Reset the sun blind, as follows:

1. Lift the window switch to move the sun blind to the fully up position.
2. Press and hold down the window switch for 15 seconds to enter the initialisation mode (this will move the blind down).
3. Release the switch.
4. Press and hold down the window switch for 2 seconds.
5. Lift and hold the window switch until the sun blind reaches the fully up position.
6. Press and release the window switch to check the operation of the One-touch function, see **61, SIDE WINDOW BLINDS**.

WARNING TRIANGLE

If supplied, the warning triangle is located in the luggage compartment, attached to an anchor point.

FIRST AID KIT

If supplied, the first aid kit is strapped to the side of the luggage compartment.

FIRE EXTINGUISHER

For certain markets, fire extinguishers are fitted to comply with local legislation. Please note it is the owner's responsibility to make sure the fire extinguisher is maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

It is also the responsibility of the owner to make sure the pressure is at a suitable operating pressure as indicated on the pressure gauge. Use only Jaguar approved fire extinguishers.

If supplied, the fire extinguisher will be located either in the luggage compartment, or mounted to the front passenger seat.

Vehicle cleaning

ALLOY WHEELS

- ⚠ Only use approved wheel cleaning products.

THE EXTERIOR

- ⚠ To prevent damage to your vehicle when using a valeting service, make sure to advise them of the cleaning instructions contained within the Owner's handbook.
- ⚠ Never use cleaning products which are not approved for use on vehicles.
- ⚠ Following cleaning of the vehicle exterior (particularly with a pressure washer), it is recommended that the vehicle is taken for a short drive in order to dry out the brakes.
- ⚠ Some high pressure cleaning systems are sufficiently powerful to penetrate door and window seals, and damage trim and door locks. Never aim the water jet directly at the engine air intake, heater air intakes, radiator cooling fins, body seals or at any components which may be damaged.

Do not aim the water jet directly at any rubber gaiters or seals on suspension joints.

Make sure that the water jet nozzle is more than 300 mm away from vehicle components.

SENSORS AND CAMERAS

- ⚠ When washing the vehicle do not aim high pressure water jets directly at any of the sensors and cameras. Do not use abrasive materials or hard/sharp objects to clean the sensors and cameras. Only use approved vehicle shampoo.

Parking aids sensors should be kept clean to maintain accuracy and performance.

If required, the cameras should be cleaned using a cloth moistened with a small amount of glass-cleaning product.

PAINTWORK

- ⚠ Substances which are corrosive, such as bird droppings, can damage the vehicle's paintwork and should be removed as soon as possible.

USING AN AUTOMATIC WASH

- ⚠ Commercially operated automatic car washes, jet washes and power-operated mops, are not recommended.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

Regularly inspect the paintwork for damage. Any stone chips, fractures, or deep scratches, in the paint/bodywork should be repaired promptly. Bare metal will corrode quickly, and if left untreated can result in expensive repairs.

ENGINE COMPARTMENT

- ⚠ Do not use a high pressure washer or steam cleaner in the engine compartment.
- ⚠ Make sure that the brake fluid reservoir is kept dry at all times. Only use a clean, dry cloth to clean the brake fluid cap and reservoir.

GLASS SURFACES

Clean the rear window with a soft cloth to avoid damaging the heating element. Do not scrape the glass or use any abrasive cleaning fluid.

Mirror glass is particularly susceptible to damage. Wash with soapy water. Do not use abrasive cleaning compounds or metal scrapers to remove ice.

Vehicle cleaning

To avoid damaging the protecting coating, only clean the interior side of the sunroof glass with a soft cloth. Do not scrape the glass or use abrasive cleaning fluids.

REAR SCREEN

To avoid damaging the heating elements when cleaning the inside of the rear screen, use only a soft damp cloth or chamois leather. Do not use solvents or sharp objects to clean the glass.

SUNROOF WIND DEFLECTOR

A mild solution of soap and water, or car shampoo, should be used to clean the wind deflector net periodically. Support the underside of the net with a soft cloth, and gently scrub the net using a soft bristled brush.

REMOVING GREASE AND TAR

Remove grease or tar with Jaguar Tar Remover or methylated spirit (alcohol). White spirit is also effective, but must not be applied to rubber, particularly the windscreen wiper blades.

- ! Make sure that after using methylated or white spirit, the area is washed immediately with soapy water, to remove all traces of spirit.

POLISHING

- ! Chrome polish, or other abrasive cleaners, must not be used on the vehicle's brightwork.

It is recommended that the vehicle is polished regularly using Jaguar polish and a polishing cloth.

THE INTERIOR

- ! To prevent damage to your vehicle when using a valeting service, make sure to advise them of the cleaning instructions contained within the Owner's handbook.
- ! The steering wheel centre pad and other areas containing airbags should only be cleaned sparingly with a damp cloth, warm water and a non-detergent soap.

CLEANING SWITCHES AND CONTROLS

- ! Use a soft, dry, lint-free cloth when cleaning switches or controls. Do not apply excessive pressure when doing so.
- ! Do not spray liquids directly onto the surface of switches and controls.
- ! Do not use chemical agents, solvents, or domestic cleaning products.
- ! When cleaning, do not allow sharp or abrasive objects to make contact with the components.

LEATHER UPHOLSTERY

To prevent ingrained dirt and staining, inspect the seat upholstery regularly and clean every 1 to 2 months, as follows:

- Wipe off fine dust from the seat surfaces using a clean, damp, non-coloured cloth. Change frequently to a clean area of cloth, to avoid abrasive action on the leather surface. Avoid over-wetting.
- If this is not sufficient, use a cloth which has been dampened with warm soapy water and then wrung out. Use only mild non-caustic soap.

Vehicle cleaning

- Use Jaguar approved Leather Cleaner for heavily soiled areas. Dry off and rub with a clean soft cloth, changing surfaces regularly.

Use Jaguar approved Leather Cleaner several times a year to maintain its appearance and suppleness. The cleaner will nourish and moisturise and help to improve the surface protective film against dust and substances.

- Do not use solvents. Do not use detergents, furniture polish or household cleaners. While these products may initially give impressive results, their use will lead to rapid deterioration of the leather and will invalidate the warranty. Jaguar recommend a basic set of products that have been specially selected for the type of leather in your vehicle.
- Dark clothing may stain leather seats just like other upholstery products.
- Sharp objects such as belts, zip fasteners, rivets, etc., can leave permanent scratches and scratch marks on the leather surface.
- Unless spillages such as tea, coffee or ink are washed away immediately, permanent staining may have to be accepted.

If a valet service is used, make sure that the specialist concerned is aware of, and follows, these instructions precisely.

FABRIC UPHOLSTERY

- ⚠ Never use soap, ammonia, bleach or other cleaners intended for use on hard surfaces.
- ⚠ Do not use upholstery cleaner on electrical equipment such as fascia switches.

- ⚠ When cleaning around electrical equipment such as switches, make sure that fluids do not leak into any gaps around the components or between panels or trim.

Use Jaguar Upholstery Cleaner, following the instructions. Avoid over-wetting.

REMOVING STAINS

Most stains on woollen fabric can be removed if treatment is carried out immediately, before the stain has a chance to dry-in.

Most stains can be treated with one of three cleaning fluids: Jaguar Upholstery Cleaner, dry cleaning fluid or clean water. Follow the instructions on the package.

CLEANING SCREENS AND DISPLAYS

- ⚠ Do not use upholstery cleaner on electrical equipment such as fascia switches.
- ⚠ When cleaning around electrical equipment such as switches, make sure fluids do not leak into any gaps around the components or between panels or trim.
- Clean with the cloth provided with the vehicle.
- Do not use chemical agents or domestic cleaners.
- Do not allow sharp, hard or abrasive objects to make contact with screens.
- Avoid exposing screens to direct sunlight for long periods.
- To prevent errors occurring, make sure only 1 finger at a time is in contact with the Touch screen.
- Do not use excessive pressure.



Vehicle cleaning

WIPER BLADES



Do not use excessive pressure.

Heavy contamination on the wiper blades should be removed using a soft, damp sponge or cloth.

CARPETS AND MATS

Marks or stains can be removed by gentle scrubbing with a weak solution of soap and warm water.

For more stubborn stains a commercially available carpet cleaner should be used.

SEAT BELTS



Do not allow any water, cleaning products or fabric from cloths to enter the seat belt mechanism. Any substance which enters the mechanism may affect the performance of the seat belt in an impact.

Extend the seat belts fully, then use warm water and a non-detergent soap to clean. Allow the seat belts to dry naturally while fully extended and do not allow the belts to retract until fully dry.

Note: While cleaning the seat belt, take the opportunity to examine the webbing for damage and wear. Any wear or damage should be reported to and, rectified by, a Retailer/ Authorised Repairer.

AIRBAG MODULE COVERS



Airbag covers should only be cleaned using a slightly dampened cloth, and a small amount of upholstery cleaner.

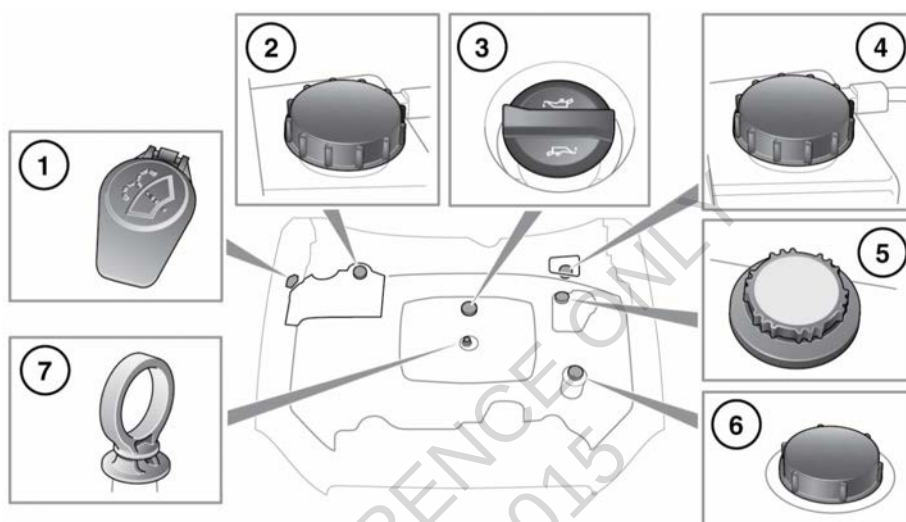


Any substance which enters the mechanism, can prevent correct deployment of an airbag during an impact.

Fluid level checks

FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS

2.0 litre petrol engine



E144236

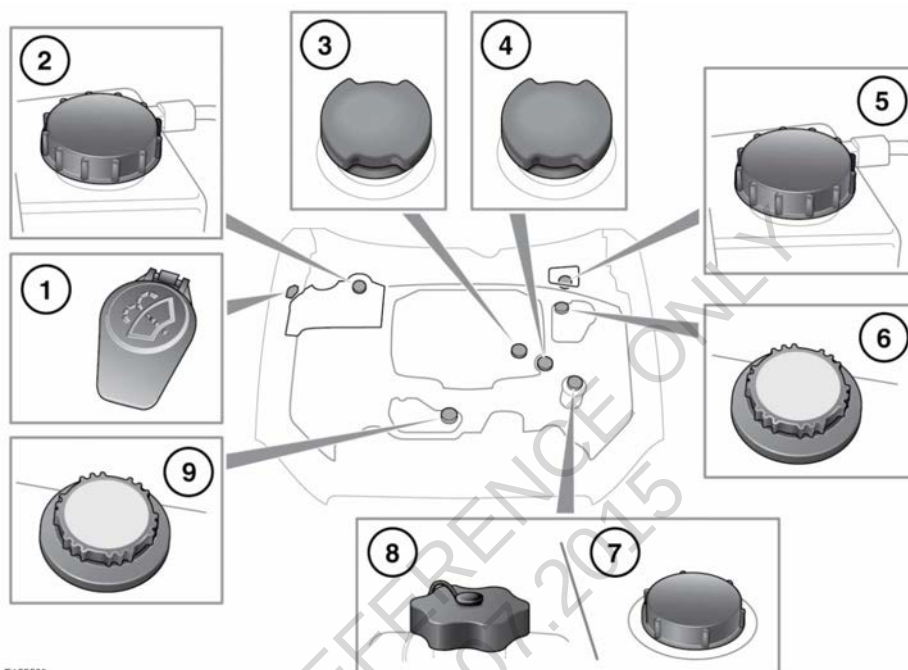
1. Washer fluid.
2. Brake fluid (right-hand drive vehicles).
3. Engine oil.
4. Brake fluid (left-hand drive vehicles).
5. Coolant.
6. Power steering.
7. Engine oil dipstick.



Do not drive the vehicle if there is a possibility that leaked fluid will come into contact with a hot surface, such as the exhaust.

Fluid level checks

3.0 and 5.0 litre petrol engines



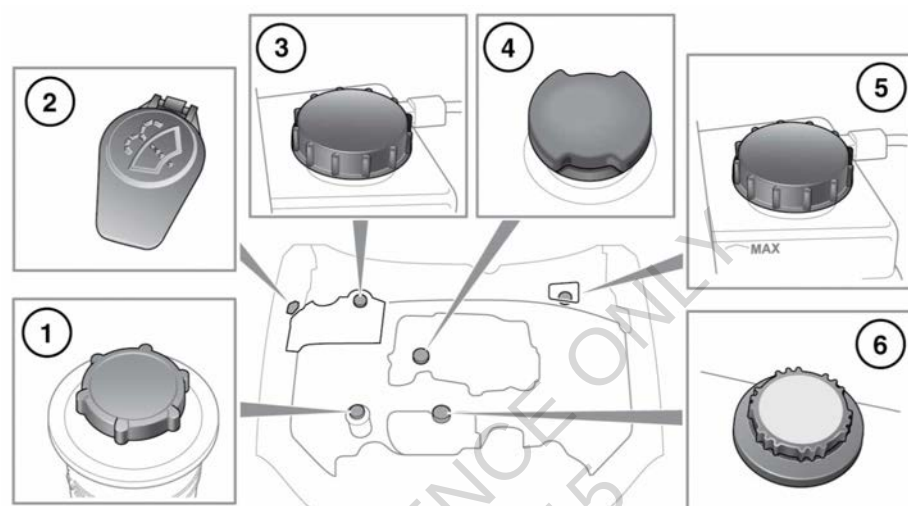
1. Washer fluid.
2. Brake fluid (right-hand drive vehicles).
3. Engine oil (3.0L engine).
4. Engine oil (5.0L engine).
5. Brake fluid (left-hand drive vehicles).
6. Coolant (3.0L engine).
7. Power steering (5.0L engine).
8. Power steering (3.0L engine).
9. Coolant (5.0L engine).



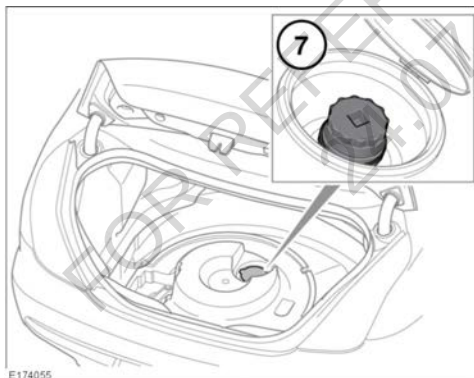
Do not drive the vehicle if there is a possibility that leaked fluid will come into contact with a hot surface, such as the exhaust.

Fluid level checks

Diesel engine



E135275



E174055

7. Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) reservoir filler cap.
The DEF reservoir filler cap is located beneath the spare wheel and tool kit. See **238, WHEEL CHANGING**.

Note: When removing the DEF reservoir filler cap, a socket drive can be used for added leverage, if it is too tight. Hand tighten only, when refitting.



Do not drive the vehicle if there is a possibility that leaked fluid will come into contact with a hot surface, such as the exhaust.

1. Power steering.
2. Washer fluid.
3. Brake fluid (right-hand drive vehicles).
4. Engine oil.
5. Brake fluid (left-hand drive vehicles).
6. Coolant.

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

The engine oil level is not monitored when the engine is running and/or the vehicle is in motion.

The engine oil should be checked frequently and topped up as required using the correct grade for the engine.

Fluid level checks

- ❗ Check the engine oil weekly. If any significant or sudden drop in oil level is noted, seek qualified assistance.
- ❗ If the message **ENGINE OIL PRESSURE LOW** is displayed, stop the engine as soon as it is safe to do so and seek qualified assistance. Do not start the engine until the cause has been rectified.

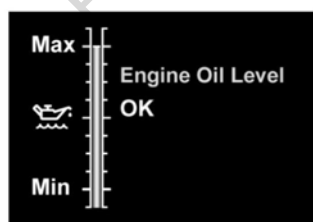
Prior to checking the oil level make sure that the vehicle is on level ground.

All except 2.0 litre petrol engine

- The engine oil has reached working temperature (oil is hot).
- The engine has been switched off for 10 minutes, as the system will not give an accurate reading until the oil level has stabilised.

The oil level can then be checked as follows:

1. Switch on the ignition (do not start the engine).
2. Make sure that Park (P) is selected.
3. Select the **Service menu** using the instrument panel menu control (see **245, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**).
Select **Oil level display** from the Service menu. The current oil level status and topping-up advice is displayed in the instrument panel, top-up as instructed.



An indication of the oil level is displayed in the gauge. Messages to the right of the gauge advise you of any action you may need to take.

If the oil level is within the required operating range, the message **Engine Oil Level OK** will be displayed. Do not add any additional oil to the engine.

If the oil level is below the required operating range, a message advising you how much oil to add will be displayed (e.g. **Add 0.5 Litre**). Add the recommended quantity of oil.

If the message **Engine Oil Level Overfilled** is displayed, seek qualified assistance immediately. Do not drive the vehicle as this will cause serious damage to the engine.

If the message **Engine Oil Level Underfilled** is displayed, add 1.5 litres (2.6 pints) of oil, then recheck the level.

If the message **Engine Oil Level Not Available** is displayed, the oil level is stabilising. Switch off the ignition, wait 10 minutes, then recheck the oil level display.

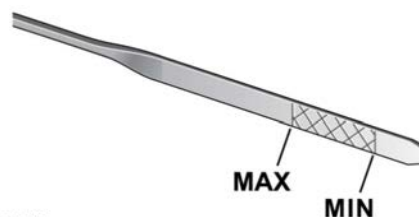
If the warning message **ENGINE OIL LEVEL MONITOR SYSTEM FAULT** is displayed, seek qualified assistance.

2.0 litre petrol engine

Prior to checking the oil level make sure that:

- The vehicle is on level ground.
- The engine oil is cold.

Note: If it is necessary to check the oil level when the engine is hot, switch off the engine and let stand for 5 minutes to allow the oil to drain into the sump. Do not start the engine.



Fluid level checks

1. Withdraw the dipstick and wipe the blade clean with a lint free cloth.
2. Fully re-insert the dipstick and withdraw again to check the oil level. Never allow the oil level to fall below the lower mark (MIN) on the dipstick.
As a general guide, if the level on the dipstick:
 - Is nearer to the upper mark or notch than the lower, add no oil.
 - Is nearer to the lower mark than the upper, add 0.5 litre (1 pint) of oil.
 - Is below the lower mark, add 0.8 litre (1.4 pints) of oil and re-check the level after a further 5 minutes.

TOPPING UP THE OIL

- ❗ Failure to use an oil that meets the required specification could cause excessive engine wear, a build up of sludge and deposits, and increase pollution. It could also lead to engine failure. Do not use low quality or obsolete oils.
- ❗ Your vehicle warranty may be invalidated if damage is caused by using oil that does not meet the required specification.
- ❗ Overfilling with oil could result in severe engine damage. Oil should be added in small quantities and the level re-checked to make sure that the engine is not overfilled.
- ❗ Do not use oil additives of any type as engine damage could occur. Use only specified lubricants.

All except 2.0 litre petrol engine

1. Unscrew the oil filler cap.
2. Add oil as indicated by the Message centre display.
3. Wait 5 minutes for the oil level to stabilise then re-check.

2.0 litre petrol engine

1. Unscrew the oil filler cap.
2. Add oil as indicated by the level on the dipstick, see **205, CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL**.
3. Wait 5 minutes for the oil level to stabilise then re-check.

It is essential to use the correct specification oil, and to make sure it is suitable for the climatic conditions in which the vehicle is to be operated, see **245, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

Jaguar recommends: **Castrol EDGE Professional**



CHECKING THE COOLANT LEVEL

- ❗ Running the engine without coolant will cause serious engine damage.
- ❗ If persistent coolant loss is noticed, seek qualified assistance immediately.

The coolant level in the expansion tank should be checked at least weekly (more frequently in high mileage or severe operating conditions). Always check the level when the system is cold.

Fluid level checks

Make sure the coolant level is maintained between the level indicator marks, as shown in the illustration.

Petrol engines



E132661

If the message **LOW COOLANT LEVEL** is displayed in the Message centre, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits and top-up the coolant reservoir with the recommended antifreeze/water mix.

If the Message centre displays the message **ENGINE OVERHEATING**, pull off the carriageway and allow the engine to idle for 5 minutes and then switch off the ignition for 10 minutes. Switch on the engine and, provided that the warning does not occur, continue your journey, avoiding harsh acceleration. Seek qualified assistance as soon as possible.

TOPPING UP THE COOLANT

-  **Never remove the filler cap when the engine is hot.**
-  **Antifreeze is highly inflammable. Do not allow antifreeze to come into contact with naked flames or other sources of ignition (e.g. a hot engine) - a fire may result.**
-  **Unscrew the filler cap slowly, allowing the pressure to escape before removing completely.**



When travelling in territories where the water supply contains salt, always make sure you carry a supply of fresh (rain or distilled) water. Topping up with salt water will cause serious engine damage.

Top-up to the upper level indicator mark located on the side of the expansion tank. For the coolant fluid specification, see **245, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

Note: In an emergency, and only if the approved antifreeze is unavailable, top-up the cooling system with clean water, but be aware of the resultant reduction in frost protection. Do not top-up or refill with conventional antifreeze formulations. If in doubt consult a qualified technician.

Make sure that the cap is tightened fully after top-up is completed by turning the cap until the ratchet cap clicks.

CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID LEVEL



Seek qualified assistance immediately if brake pedal travel is unusually long, unusually short or if there is any significant loss of brake fluid. Driving under such conditions could result in extended stopping distances or complete brake failure.



If the quantity of fluid in the brake reservoir drops below the recommended level, a red warning lamp in the instrument panel will illuminate and the message **Brake Fluid Low** will be displayed in the message centre.

Note: If the warning lamp illuminates or the message is displayed while the vehicle is being driven, stop the vehicle as soon as safety permits by gently applying the brakes. Check and top-up the fluid level if necessary.

Fluid level checks

 **Brake fluid is highly toxic - keep containers sealed and out of the reach of children. If accidental consumption is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.**

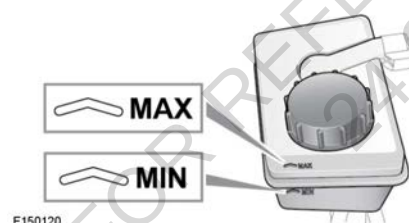
 **If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water.**

 **Brake fluid is highly inflammable. Do not allow brake fluid to come into contact with naked flames or other sources of ignition (e.g. a hot engine).**

 **Do not drive the vehicle with the fluid level below the MIN mark.**

With the vehicle on level ground, check the fluid level at least every week (more frequently in high mileage or arduous operating conditions).

The brake fluid reservoir is located beneath a cover on the raised platform to the rear of the main underbonnet area. See **245, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.



The brake fluid level should be between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the side of the reservoir.

The fluid level may drop slightly during normal use, as a result of brake pad wear, but should not be allowed to drop below the **MIN** mark.

TOPPING UP THE BRAKE FLUID

 Brake fluid will damage painted surface. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

 Only use new fluid from an airtight container (fluid from open containers or fluid previously bled from the system, will have absorbed moisture, which will adversely affect performance, and must not be used).

1. Clean the filler cap with a dry, clean cloth before removing. This will help prevent dirt or moisture from entering the reservoir.
2. Remove the filler cap.
3. Top up the reservoir with the specified brake fluid to at least the **MINIMUM** mark, see **245, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

 Do not top up the brake fluid to the maximum mark unless the brake pads have been replaced. If unsure seek qualified assistance.

4. Replace the filler cap.
5. Refit the reservoir cover.

CHECKING THE POWER STEERING FLUID LEVEL

 **Power steering fluid is highly toxic. Keep containers sealed and out of reach of children. If accidental consumption of fluid is suspected, seek medical attention immediately.**

 **If the fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, rinse immediately with plenty of water.**

Fluid level checks

 **Power steering fluid is highly inflammable. Do not allow power steering fluid to come into contact with naked flames or other sources of ignition (e.g. a hot engine).**

 The engine must not be started if the fluid level has dropped below the **MIN** mark.

 Seek qualified assistance immediately if there is a noticeable drop in the fluid level.

 If fluid loss is slow, the reservoir may be topped-up to the upper level mark to enable the vehicle to be driven to a repair facility for examination. However, it is recommended that you seek qualified assistance before driving the vehicle.

Check and top-up the fluid with the vehicle on level ground, with the engine switched off and the system cold. Make sure that the steering wheel is not turned after stopping the engine.

The level of fluid can be seen through the translucent body of the reservoir, see **203, FLUID FILLER LOCATIONS**.

The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks.

TOPPING UP THE POWER STEERING FLUID

 It is imperative that the power steering system does not become contaminated in any way. Always use new fluid and clean the area around the filler neck both before removing the filler cap and after topping up. Never return drained fluid to the system.

 Power steering fluid will damage painted surfaces. Soak up any spillage with an absorbent cloth immediately and wash the area with a mixture of car shampoo and water.

1. Clean the filler cap before removing to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
2. Remove the filler cap.
3. Top-up the reservoir until the fluid level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks. For the power steering fluid specification, see **245, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.
4. Replace the filler cap.

CHECKING THE WASHER FLUID LEVEL

 **Some screen washer products are flammable, do not allow screen washer fluid to come into contact with naked flames or sources of ignition.**

 **If the vehicle is operated in temperatures below 4°C (40°F), use a washer fluid with frost protection.**

 Only screen washer fluid products which are approved for automotive use should be used and then only in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

 Take care to avoid spillage, particularly if an undiluted or high concentration is being used. If spillage occurs, wash the affected area immediately with water.

The washer reservoir supplies the windscreen and headlamp washer jets.

Check and top-up the reservoir level at least every week, see **245, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.

Operate the washers periodically to check that the nozzles are clear and properly directed.

Fluid level checks

TOPPING UP THE WASHER FLUID

1. Clean the filler cap before opening to prevent dirt from entering the reservoir.
2. Open the filler cap.
3. Top-up the reservoir with the specified washer fluid until the fluid is visible in the filler neck, see **245, LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS**.
4. Close the filler cap.

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

Vehicle battery

BATTERY WARNING SYMBOLS



Do not allow naked flames or other sources of ignition near the battery, as the battery may emit explosive gases.



Make sure that when working near or handling the battery, suitable eye protection is worn, to protect the eyes from acid splashes.



To prevent risk of injury, do not allow children near the battery.



Be aware that the battery may emit explosive gases.



The battery contains acid which is extremely corrosive and toxic.



Consult the handbook for information, before handling the battery.

BATTERY CARE



If battery electrolyte comes into contact with your eyes, skin, or clothes you should remove the affected clothing and flush the skin/eyes with copious amounts of water. Seek medical assistance immediately.



If swallowed, battery electrolyte can be fatal, seek medical assistance immediately.



Do not connect any 12 volt equipment directly to the battery terminals. Doing so may cause a spark, which can result in an explosion.



The cell plugs and vent pipe must be in place at all times when the battery is connected to the vehicle. Make sure that the vent pipe is clear of obstructions and not kinked. Failure to do so may cause a pressure build up in the battery, resulting in an explosion.



Do not expose the battery to a naked flame or spark as the battery produces explosive, flammable gas.



Never jump start (boost), charge, or try to start a vehicle with a frozen battery. Doing so can result in an explosion.



Remove all metal jewellery before working on, or near, the battery, and never allow metal tools or vehicle components to come into contact with the battery terminals.



Do not allow the battery posts or terminals to come into contact with your skin. They contain lead and lead compounds, which are toxic. Always wash your hands thoroughly after handling the battery.



Do not allow battery electrolyte to come into contact with fabrics or painted surfaces. If battery electrolyte comes into contact with any surface, the surface should be washed down immediately with copious amounts of clean water.

Your vehicle is fitted with a low maintenance battery, which is located under the floor of the luggage compartment.

In hot climates more frequent checks of the battery electrolyte level and condition are required. If necessary, the battery cells can be topped up using distilled water.

Vehicle battery

BATTERY MONITORING SYSTEM (BMS)

The Intelligent Power System Management (IPSM) continuously monitors the condition of the main vehicle battery. If excessive battery discharge occurs, the system will begin to shut down non-essential electrical systems in order to protect the battery.

If the IPSM calculates that battery condition is not within set parameters, there are 2 levels of action which can be taken. Both levels have an accompanying message on the Touch screen, and in the case of the low battery warning, in the Message centre.

- **Energy Management:** Will be displayed on the Touch screen if the engine is not running, and system features are causing excessive battery discharge. After 3 minutes the IPSM will begin shutting down vehicle systems. Normal system operation will resume when the engine is started.
- **Low Battery - Please Start Engine:** Will be displayed on the Touch screen and Message centre if the engine is not running. After 3 minutes the IPSM will begin shutting down vehicle systems. Normal system operation will resume when the engine is started.



Only start the engine if it is safe to do so.

Note: If the message **Low Battery - Please Start Engine** is displayed, drive the vehicle for at least 30 minutes in temperatures above 0°C (32°F) or at least 60 minutes if temperatures are below 0°C (32°F). This will allow the battery to recover to an acceptable level. If normal system operation is not resumed when the engine is switched back off, the battery may not have been sufficiently charged. If safe to do so, re-start the engine. If problems still exist, contact your Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

CONNECTING JUMP LEADS



Always wear appropriate eye protection when working with batteries.



Do not disconnect the discharged battery.



Do not connect a jump lead to the negative (-) terminal of the battery. Always connect to the recommended earthing point.



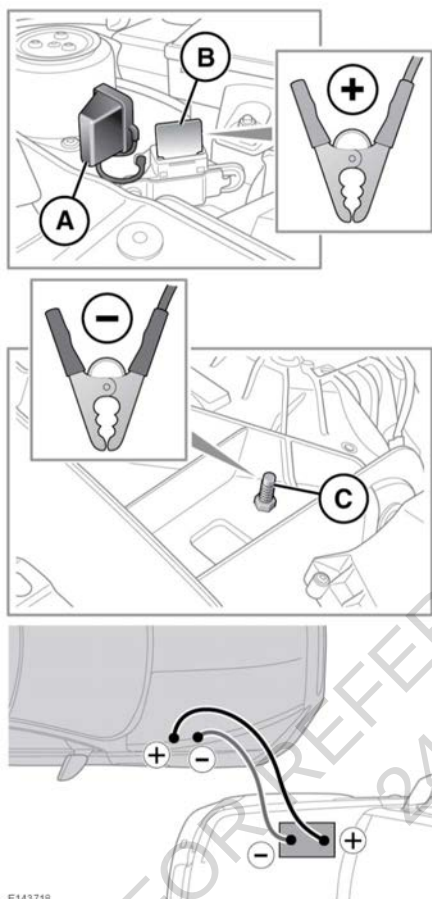
Make sure the bodywork of the donor and disabled vehicles do not touch.



Make sure both batteries are of the 12 volt type and that the jump leads have insulated clamps and are approved for use with 12 volt batteries.

Note: Before connecting jump leads, make sure that the battery connections on the disabled vehicle are correct and that all electrical equipment has been switched off.

Vehicle battery



With the bonnet open and the engine cover removed (see **196, UNDER BONNET COVERS - REMOVAL**):

1. Connect the positive jump lead (Red) to the positive terminal on the donor vehicle's battery.
2. Remove the positive terminal cover (A) and connect the other end of the positive jump lead to the positive terminal (B).

3. Connect the negative jump lead (Black) to the recommended jump starting earth point of the donor vehicle.

4. Connect the other end of the negative jump lead to the negative post (C).



Check that all cables are clear of any moving components and that all 4 connections are secure.

5. Start the engine of the donor vehicle, and allow it to idle for a few minutes.

6. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

If repeated attempts to start the disabled vehicle are needed, allow the donor vehicle to idle for a few minutes between attempts.

7. Allow both vehicles to idle for 2 minutes.

8. Switch off the donor vehicle.

DISCONNECTING JUMP LEADS



To avoid serious injury use extreme caution when removing the jump leads as the engine will be running on the previously disabled vehicle. This means that you may be working close to components which are moving at high speed, carry high voltage, or may be hot.

Note: Do not switch on any electrical equipment until after the cables have been disconnected.

The engine should be running on the previously disabled vehicle and the engine switched off on the donor vehicle. Disconnect the jump leads in the exact reverse order of that used for connection.

CONNECTING A STARTING AID



Do not connect the starting aid to any battery terminal on your vehicle. Doing so may cause a spark, which can result in an explosion. It may also result in damage to the charging system.

Vehicle battery

To start the vehicle using a starting aid or a slave battery, follow the instructions in the sequence given:

1. Connect the positive (Red) cable to the positive terminal (in the engine compartment) of the disabled vehicle.
2. Connect the negative (Black) cable to the negative terminal (in the engine compartment) of the disabled vehicle.
3. Connect/switch on the starting aid.
4. Start the engine and allow it to idle.
5. Disconnect/switch off the starting aid.
6. Disconnect the negative (Black) cable from the negative terminal of the vehicle.
7. Disconnect the positive (Red) cable from the positive terminal of the vehicle.

CHARGING THE VEHICLE BATTERY



The battery must be disconnected and removed from the vehicle before charging.



Battery disconnection, removal and replacement, should only be carried out by qualified personnel. Consult your Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

REPLACING THE VEHICLE BATTERY



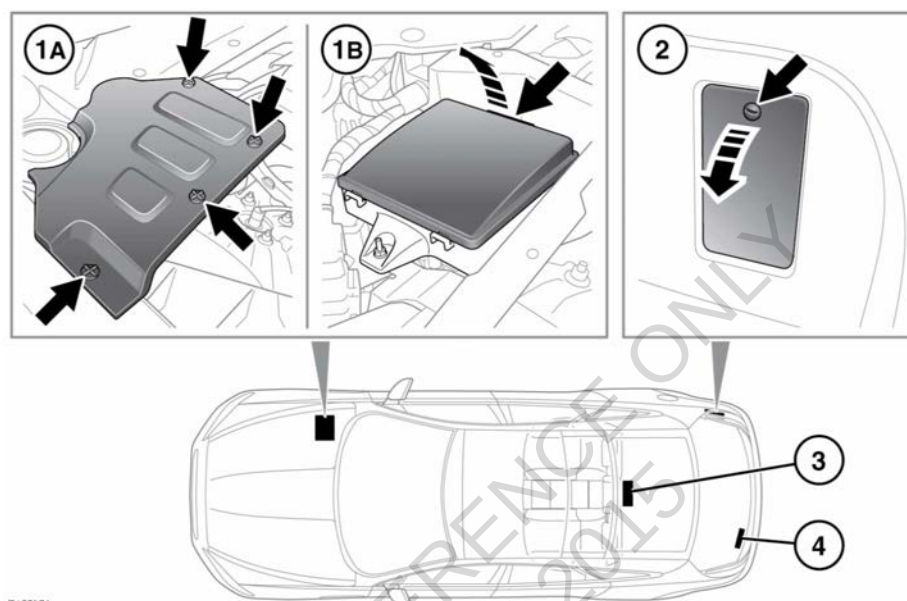
Battery disconnection, removal and replacement, should only be carried out by qualified personnel. Consult your Retailer/ Authorised Repairer.



Used batteries must be disposed of correctly, as they contain a number of harmful substances. Seek advice from your Retailer/Authorised Repairer and/or your local authority.

Fuses

FUSE BOX LOCATIONS



E155374

- ⚠ When a fuse box lid is removed, take care to protect the box from moisture, and refit the lid at the earliest opportunity.

There are 4 separate fuse boxes fitted to the vehicle, each one containing fuses protecting a different group of circuits.

1. Engine compartment fuse box.
 - A. Undo the 4 turn-buckles and remove the engine cover to access the fuse box.
 - B. Remove the fuse box cover.
2. Luggage compartment fuse box.
3. Passenger compartment fuse box.
The fuse box is accessed through the flap behind the rear centre armrest.
4. Secondary luggage compartment fuse box.

To access the fuse box, raise the luggage compartment floor trim.

CHANGING A FUSE

- ⚠ Always switch off the ignition system and the affected electrical circuit, before replacing a fuse.
- ⚠ Fit Jaguar approved replacement fuses of the same rating and type, or fuses of matching specification.
- ⚠ If the replacement fuse blows after installation, the system should be checked by your Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

Note: Jaguar recommend that owners do not remove or replace relays. It is recommended that you seek qualified assistance in the event of a relay failure.

Fuses

Spare fuses are located in the tool tray situated under the floor in the luggage compartment.

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

Fuses

ENGINE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse No	Rating (amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit
F1	-	-	-
F2	10A	Red	Engine management sensors (petrol & GTDI).
	5A	Tan	Engine and E-box cooling fans.
F3	25A	Clear	Ignition coils (petrol & GTDI).
	5A	Tan	Valve control (diesel).
F4	30A	Green	Power wash pump.
F5	40A	Orange	Main electrical power to module (petrol).
	20A	Yellow	ECM (GTDI).
	5A	Tan	Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) (diesel).
F6	40A	Orange	Right-side front screen heater and heated wiper.
F7	30A	Green	Traction control module (AWD).
F8	10A	Red	Oxygen sensor (petrol & GTDI).
	5A	Tan	Active engine mount.
F9	10A	Red	Engine cooling fan, Engine management (petrol & GTDI).
F10	-	-	-
F11	15A	Blue	DEF (diesel).
	-	-	Spare (petrol & GTDI).
F12	20A	Yellow	Oxygen sensors Bank A (petrol & GTDI).
	10A	Red	Engine management sensors.
F13	25A	Clear	ECM (diesel).
	20A	Yellow	Oxygen sensors Bank B (petrol).
	-	-	Spare (GTDI).
F14	5A	Tan	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).
F15	20A	Yellow	Oxygen sensors (petrol). DEF NOX (diesel).
	-	-	Spare (GTDI).
F16	-	-	Spare.
F17	-	-	-

Fuses

Fuse No	Rating (amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit
F18	15A	Blue	Horn.
F19	30A	Green	Starter.
F20	40A	Orange	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) pumps.
F21	25A	Clear	ABS valve.
F22	15A	Blue	Left-side LED headlamps.
F23	15A	Blue	Right-side LED headlamps.
F24	-	-	-
F25	15A	Blue	Intercooler water pump - EWP (petrol).
F26	40A	Orange	Wiper motor.
F27	5A	Tan	Monitor.
F28	15A	Blue	Transmission control module.
F29	-	-	-
F30	-	-	-
F31	-	-	-
F32	40A	Orange	Left-side heated screen.
F33	-	-	Spare.
F34	-	-	-
F35	80A	Black	Cooling fan.

Fuses

PASSENGER COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse No	Rating (amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit
F1	5A	Tan	RF-RX, IMS, Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).
F2	-	-	-
F3	-	-	-
F4	5A	Tan	CAN Gateway module.
F5	5A	Tan	Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) module, Yaw rate, Steering angle sensor.
F6	5A	Tan	Fuse box engine compartment.
F7	20A	Yellow	Rear climate control.
F8	30A	Green	Front passenger's seat adjustment.
F9	5A	Tan	Electric Parking Brake (EPB).
F10	5A	Tan	Air suspension control module.
F11	-	-	-
F12	-	-	-
F13	-	-	-
F14	5A	Tan	Brake pedal switch.
F15	30A	Green	Heated rear screen.
F16	-	-	-
F17	5A	Tan	Keyless vehicle module supply.
F18	-	-	-
F19	5A	Tan	Engine control module.
F20	10A	Red	Heated steering wheel.
F21	5A	Tan	Air conditioning sensor, Front overhead console, Front dual climate control module and smog sensor.
F22	5A	Tan	Transmission control module, E-Diff, Jaguar Drive selector.
F23	5A	Tan	Headlamp levelling.
F24	5A	Tan	Right-side front and rear lamp clusters.
F25	10A	Red	Left-side front and rear lamp clusters.
F26	-	-	-

Fuses

Fuse No	Rating (amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit
F27	-	-	-
F28	20A	Yellow	Rear seat dual climate control module.
F29	20A	Yellow	Front seat dual climate control module.
F30	25A	Clear	Passenger door module.
F31	5A	Tan	Rain/light sensor.
F32	25A	Clear	Driver's door module.
F33	20A	Yellow	Front dual climate control module.
F34	10A	Red	Fuel filler flap lock.
F35	-	-	-
F36	5A	Tan	Battery back-up sounder/tilt sensor.
F37	20A	Yellow	Keyless vehicle module.
F38	15A	Blue	Front screen wash pump relay.
F39	25A	Clear	Left-side rear door module.
F40	5A	Tan	Driver's window, Clock, Switches around the Touch screen, Rear climate panel, Passenger door memory.
F41	-	-	-
F42	30A	Green	Driver's seat module.
F43	-	-	-
F44	25A	Clear	Right-side rear door module.
F45	30A	Green	Passenger front seat switch pack.
F46	30A	Green	Driver's seat module.
F47	-	-	-
F48	30A	Green	Left-side rear seat module.
F49	5A	Tan	Right-side headlamp motor.
F50	5A	Tan	Left-side headlamp motor.
F51	5A	Tan	Steering wheel switches.
F52	20A	Yellow	Front cigar lighter.
F53	20A	Yellow	Rear cigar lighter.
F54	-	-	-



Fuses

Fuse No	Rating (amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit
F55	20A	Yellow	Rear accessory socket.
F56	10A	Red	Restraint control module, Occupancy sensor.
F57	10A	Red	Glovebox, glovebox lamp, front and rear overhead consoles, sun visor lamps, vanity lamps.
F58	30A	Green	Right-side rear seat module.
F59	-	-	-
F60	-	-	-
F61	10A	Red	Integrated antenna unit, cluster, cluster fan.
F62	10A	Red	Climate control module.
F63	20A	Yellow	Front accessory socket.
F64	15A	Blue	Left-side rear sun blind.
F65	-	-	-
F66	5A	Tan	On-board diagnostic.
F67	-	-	-
F68	-	-	-
F69	15A	Blue	Right-side rear sun blind.

Fuses

LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT FUSE BOX

Fuse No	Rating (amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit
F1	30A	Green	Right-side Electric Parking Brake (EPB).
F2	-	-	-
F3	-	-	-
F4	5A	Tan	Singapore road pricing.
F5	-	-	-
F6	30A	Green	Power boot lid.
F7	-	-	-
F8	5A	Tan	Telematics.
F9	-	-	-
F10	-	-	-
F11	20A	Yellow	Front heated seat.
F12	10A	Red	Seat movement logic and switch power.
F13	10A	Red	Rear seat logic.
F14	20A	Yellow	Driver's heated seat.
F15	-	-	-
F16	10A	Red	Chassis control module.
F17	10A	Red	Chassis control module (air suspension).
F18	10A	Red	Infotainment Master Controller (IMC) fan.
F19	30A	Green	Fuel pump, Body control module, LSD.
F20	-	-	-
F21	10A	Red	DiM.
F22	10A	Red	Headlamp control module, Camera, Lane change merge assist, Park aid module, Interior mirror.
F23	5A	Tan	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).
F24	5A	Tan	GATEWAY.
F25	5A	Tan	Air suspension module.
F26	20A	Yellow	Rear right-side Climate seat.
F27	20A	Yellow	Rear left-side Climate seat.



Fuses

Fuse No	Rating (amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit
F28	-	-	-
F29	-	-	-
F30	2A	Grey	VICS.
F31	40A	Green	Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF).
F32	30A	Green	Left-side EPB.
F33*	40A	Green	E-diff module.
F34*	40A	Green	Front blower motor.
F35*	60A	Yellow	Quiescent relay box.
F36*	40A	Green	Sunroof module.
F37*	60A	Yellow	Air suspension.
F38*	40A	Green	Power amp.
F39	-	-	-

*Jaguar recommends that these fuses should only be serviced by a Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

Secondary luggage compartment fuse box

Fuse No	Rating (amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit
F1	15A	Blue	Touch screen display.
F2	10A	Red	Amplifier, Clock.
F3	-	-	-
F4	10A	Red	Phone connect view, DAB radio, Navigation, TV.
F5	15A	Blue	Integrated audio module.
F6	15A	Blue	Rear seat entertainment.
F7	-	-	-
F8	-	-	-
F9	-	-	-
F10	-	-	-
F11	-	-	-

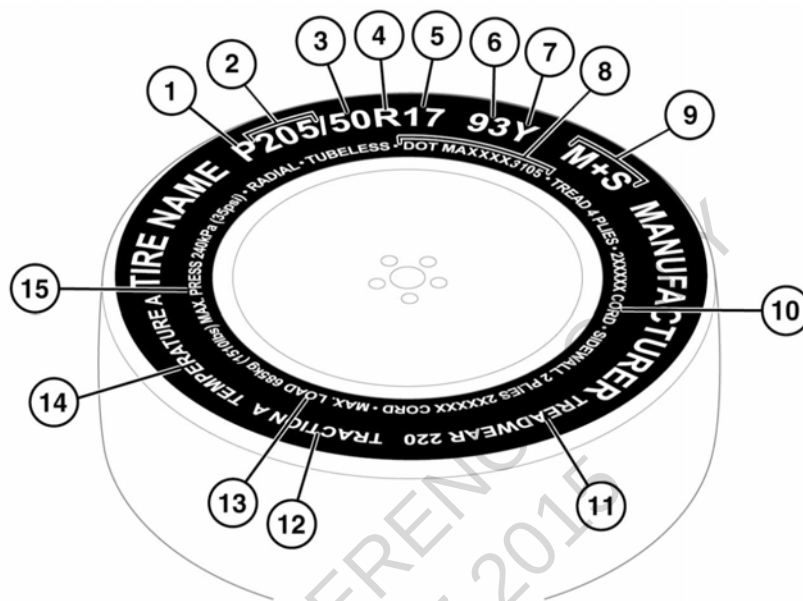
Fuses

Fuse No	Rating (amps)	Fuse Colour	Circuit
F12	-	-	-
F13	-	-	-
F14	-	-	-
F15	15A	Blue	Heating and ventilation module.
F16	-	-	-

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

Tyres

TYRE MARKINGS



E135318

1. **P** indicates that the tyre is for passenger vehicle use. This index is not always shown.
2. The width of the tyre from sidewall edge to sidewall edge in millimeters.
3. The aspect ratio, also known as the profile, gives the sidewall height as a percentage of the tread width. So, if the tread width is 205 mm and the aspect ratio is 50, the sidewall height will be 102 mm.
4. **R** indicates that the tyre is of Radial ply construction.
5. The diameter of the wheel rim given (in inches).
6. The load index for the tyre. This index is not always shown.



The load index on all replacement tyres must be, at least, the same specifications as the Original Equipment (OE). If in doubt consult a Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

7. The speed rating denotes the maximum speed at which the tyre should be used for extended periods. See **227, SPEED RATING**.
8. Tyre manufacturing standard information, which can be used for tyre recalls and other checking processes. Most of this information relates to the manufacturer, place of manufacture etc. The last 4 numbers are the date of manufacture. For example, if the number was 5111, the tyre was made in the 51st week of 2011.
9. **M+S** or **M/S** indicates that the tyre has been designed with some capability for mud and snow.

Tyres

10. The number of plies in both the tread area, and the sidewall area, indicates how many layers of rubber coated material make up the structure of the tyre. Information is also provided on the type of materials used.
11. Wear rate indicator. A tyre rated at 400 for example, will last twice as long as a tyre rated at 200.
12. The traction rating grades a tyre's performance when stopping on a wet road surface. The higher the grade, the better the braking performance. The grades, from highest to lowest are; **AA, A, B** and **C**.
13. The maximum load which can be carried by the tyre.
14. Heat resistance grading. The tyre's resistance to heat is grade **A, B** or **C**, with **A** indicating the greatest resistance to heat. This grading is provided for a correctly inflated tyre, which is being used within its speed and loading limits.
15. The maximum inflation pressure for the tyre. **229, AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS.**

SPEED RATING

Rating	Speed km/h (mph)
Q	160 (99)
R	170 (106)
S	180 (112)
T	190 (118)
U	200 (124)
H	210 (130)
V	240 (149)
W	270 (168)
Y	300 (186)

TYRE CARE

-  Do not drive the vehicle if a tyre is damaged, excessively worn or incorrectly inflated.
-  Avoid contaminating the tyres with vehicle fluids as they may cause damage to the tyre.
-  Avoid spinning the wheels. The forces released can damage the structure of the tyre and cause it to fail.
-  If wheel spin is unavoidable due to a loss of traction (in deep snow, for example), do not exceed 50 km/h (30 mph).
-  Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the sidewall of the tyre.

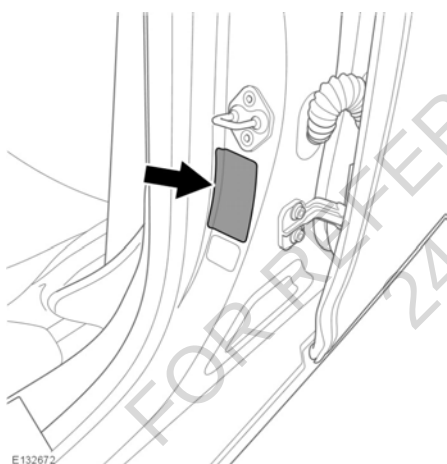
Note: All of the vehicle's tyres (including the spare) should be checked regularly for damage, wear and distortion. If you are in any doubt about the condition of a tyre, have it checked immediately by a tyre repair centre or a Retailer/Authorised Repairer.

TYRE PRESSURES

-  Pressure checks should only be carried out when the tyres are cold, and the vehicle has been stationary for more than 3 hours. A hot tyre at or below recommended cold inflation pressure is dangerously under-inflated.
-  Never drive your vehicle if the tyre pressures are incorrect. Under-inflation causes excessive flexing and uneven tyre wear. This can lead to sudden tyre failure. Over-inflation causes harsh ride, uneven tyre wear and poor handling.

Tyres

-  **Do not drive the vehicle with a leaking tyre. Even if the tyre appears to be inflated it could be dangerously under-inflated and will continue to deflate. Replace the tyre or contact an approved repairer.**
-  **Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.**
-  **If the vehicle has been parked in strong sunlight, or used in high ambient temperatures, do not reduce the tyre pressures. Move the vehicle into the shade and allow the tyres to cool before re-checking the pressures.**



The recommended tyre pressures are listed on a label located in the driver's door opening.

Check the tyres, including the spare, for condition and pressure on a weekly basis and before long journeys.

If tyre pressures are checked while the vehicle is inside a protected covered area (e.g. a garage) and subsequently driven in lower outdoor temperatures, tyre under-inflation could occur.

A slight pressure loss occurs naturally with time. If this exceeds 0.14 bar (2 psi, 14 kPa,) per week, have the cause investigated and rectified by qualified assistance.

If it is necessary to check tyre pressures when the tyres are warm, you should expect the pressures to have increased by up to 0.3 - 0.4 bar (4 - 6 psi, 30 - 40 kPa). Do not reduce the tyre pressures to the cold inflation pressure under these circumstances. Allow the tyres to cool fully before adjusting the pressures.

The following procedure should be used to check and adjust the tyres pressures.

-  To avoid damaging the valves, do not apply excessive force or sideways pressure on the gauge/inflator.
-  To avoid damage to TPMS valves, it is recommended not to use rigid tyre inflation wands. This is to avoid the risk of excess leverage and sideways pressure on the valve.

1. Remove the valve cap.
2. Firmly attach a tyre pressure gauge/inflator to the valve.
3. Read the tyre pressure from the gauge and add air if required.
4. If air is added to the tyre, remove the gauge and re-attach it before reading the pressure. Failure to do so may result in an inaccurate reading.
5. If the tyre pressure is too high, remove the gauge and allow air out of the tyre by pressing the centre of the valve. Refit the gauge to the valve and check the pressure.
6. Repeat the process, adding or removing air as required, until the correct tyre pressure is reached.
7. Refit the valve cap.

Tyres

TYRE VALVES

Keep the valve caps screwed down firmly to prevent water or dirt entering the valve. Check the valves for leaks when checking the tyre pressures.

REPLACEMENT TYRES



Always fit replacement tyres of the same type, and wherever possible of the same make and tread pattern.



If the use of tyres not recommended by Jaguar is unavoidable, make sure that you read, and fully comply with, the tyre manufacturer's instructions.

Ideally, tyres should be replaced in sets of four. If this is not possible, replace the tyres in pairs (both front or both rear). When tyres are replaced, the wheels should always be re-balanced and alignment checked.

The correct tyre specification for your vehicle can be found on the tyre placard label.

AVOIDING FLAT SPOTS

In areas of extended high ambient temperature, vehicle tyres can be affected by a softening of the tyre sidewall. If the vehicle is stationary for long periods, the effect is to slightly deform the tyre at the point where the tyre meets the standing surface. This is known as a flat spot.

This is normal tyre behaviour. However, when the vehicle is subsequently driven, vibration may be experienced from the flat spot. The condition will steadily improve with extra mileage.

In order to minimise flat spotting while the vehicle is stationary for a long period, tyre pressures can be increased to the maximum as stated on the tyre sidewall. The tyres must be returned to the specified running pressures before driving. See **227, TYRE PRESSURES**.

TYRE DEGRADATION

Tyres degrade over time due to the effects of ultraviolet light, extreme temperatures, high loads, and environmental conditions. It is recommended that tyres are replaced at least every six years, but they may require replacement more frequently.

USING WINTER TYRES

In many countries legislation exists that requires the use of winter tyres during specified periods of the year.

Note: *M+S (mud and snow) tyres have a recognised level of winter performance and need not be replaced.*



Note: *A dedicated winter tyre often has a lower speed rating than the original equipment tyre, and the vehicle must therefore be driven within the speed limitation of the tyre. Consult your Jaguar Retailer for further information. In markets that require a tyre's maximum speed label to be fitted, the tyre's maximum speed label should be placed within the driver's field of vision. This can be obtained from the tyre Retailer.*



This symbol identifies dedicated winter tyres, which can be fitted if optimum winter traction is required, or the vehicle is to be used in more extreme winter conditions.

Winter tyres must be fitted to all 4 wheels.

For optimum traction, tyres should be run in for at least 160 kilometres (100 miles) on dry roads prior to driving on snow or ice.

Tyres

Use of dedicated winter tyres may require a change of wheel size, depending on the original choice of wheel. All 4 wheels must be changed.

Approved winter tyres

Front:

245/45R19 102V Pirelli Sotto Zero Series II.

245/45R20 99V Pirelli Sotto Zero Series II.

245/45R19 102V Dunlop Winter Sport 3D.

245/45R20 99V Dunlop Winter Sport 3D.

Rear:

275/40R19 105V Pirelli Sotto Zero Series II.

275/35R20 102V Pirelli Sotto Zero Series II.

275/40R19 105V Dunlop Winter Sport 3D.

275/35R20 102V Dunlop Winter Sport 3D.

Tyre pressures

Up to 160 km/h (100 mph)	
Front	2.2 bar (32 psi, 220 kPa)
Rear	2.2 bar (32 psi, 220 kPa)

USING SNOW CHAINS



Use traction devices only in heavy snow conditions, on hard road surfaces.



Never exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) when traction devices are fitted.



Never fit traction devices to a temporary use spare wheel.



It is essential that only snow chains of the recommended type are fitted.

Jaguar approved traction devices may be used to improve traction on compacted snow in heavy snow conditions.

If it becomes necessary to fit traction devices, the following points must be observed:

- Only Jaguar approved traction devices should be used on the vehicle. Only Jaguar approved traction devices have been tested to make sure that they do not cause damage to the vehicle. Contact a Jaguar Retailer/ Authorised Repairer for information.
- The wheels and tyres fitted must conform to the specifications of the original equipment.
- Single sided traction devices or snow chains can be fitted to the rear wheels. They should not be used on temporary spare wheels.
- Fit traction devices in pairs on the same axle.
- Always read, understand and follow the traction device manufacturer's instructions. Pay particular attention to the maximum speed and fitting instructions.
- Avoid tyre/vehicle damage, by removing the traction devices as soon as the conditions allow.

Note: When using snow chains, select JaguarDrive Control Winter mode **and** switch DSC off. DSC would reduce the deep snow traction capability as it would limit wheel spin to a level below that which is required to generate maximum traction.

TYRE DECLARATION (India only)

All imported tyres meet the requirements of Bureau of India Standards (BIS) and comply with the requirements under Central Motor Vehicle Rules (CMVR) 1989. The tyres are the same as those tyres supplied as Original Equipment (OE) for Jaguar models which are fully Type Approved for the Indian market.

Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)

TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)

 TPMS provides a low pressure warning and does not re-inflate your tyres. Tyre pressures should be checked regularly using an accurate pressure gauge when the tyres are cold.

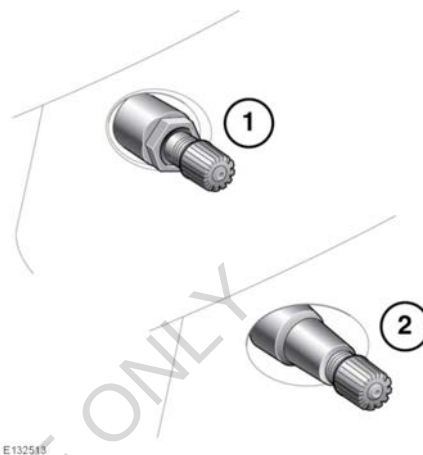
 TPMS can NOT register damage to a tyre. Regularly check the condition of your tyres.

 When inflating tyres, care should be taken to avoid bending or damaging the TPMS valves. Always make sure of correct alignment of the inflation head to the valve stem.

 To avoid damage to TPMS valves, it is recommended not to use rigid tyre inflation wands. This is to avoid the risk of excess leverage and sideways pressure on the valve.

Note: Different types of tyre may affect TPMS performance. Always replace tyres in accordance with recommendations.

TPMS constantly monitors the tyre pressure in each wheel except for the temporary use spare tyre (when fitted) which is not monitored.



Wheels fitted with TPMS can be visually identified by the external metal lock nut and valve (1). All Jaguar non-TPMS wheels have a rubber valve fitted (2).

Tyre pressures should be checked regularly when the tyres are cold, and adjusted as necessary. The presence of TPMS does not remove the need to do this to ensure vehicle safety.

The tyre pressure warning lamp (see 47, **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (YELLOW)**) illuminates when one or more of the tyres are significantly under-inflated. Stop and check the tyres as soon as possible and inflate them to the recommended pressure for the vehicle loading condition.

TYRE PRESSURE CHECK

The Instrument panel can be used to display the vehicle's tyre pressures. The tyre pressure figures can be accessed via **Tyre Pressures** and the **Recommended Pressures** menus. See 41, **INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Note: The tyre pressure units can be configured to display as either bar, psi, or kPa via the **Tyre Pressures** and the **Units** menu.



Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS)

When selected, the last known tyre pressures will be displayed, alongside the recommended cold tyre pressures (in brackets).

Note: If any of the wheels or tyres have been removed, the displayed tyre pressures may not be valid. Drive the vehicle for at least 15 minutes in order to re-calibrate the system.

Note: If in use, always replace the temporary spare wheel before having a TPMS fault investigated.

RECOMMENDED TYRE PRESSURE LOOK-UP

The Instrument panel can be used to display the recommended cold tyre pressures for your vehicle. The tyre pressure look-up table can be accessed via **Tyre Pressures** and the **Recommended Pressures** menus. See **41, INSTRUMENT PANEL MENU**.

Depending on the specification of your vehicle, a number of different values may be displayed to reflect different driving conditions, for example, high speed driving or for a heavily laden vehicle.

TEMPORARY-USE SPARE WHEEL AND TYRE CHANGE

If the temporary use spare wheel is fitted, the system will automatically recognise the change in wheel positions. After approximately 10 minutes of driving above 25 km/h (18 mph), the message **FRONT[REAR] RIGHT[LEFT] TYRE PRESSURE NOT MONITORED** will be displayed, accompanied by illumination of the warning lamp.

The warning lamp will first flash and then illuminate continuously. Extended use of the temporary use spare wheel will trigger the message **TYRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM FAULT**.

This TPMS display sequence will be activated at every ignition cycle until the temporary spare wheel is replaced by a full-size road wheel with a TPMS sensor fitted.

Tyre repair kit

TYRE REPAIR KIT

-  If you are in any doubt regarding your ability to carry out the instructions, contact your Retailer/Authorised Repairer before attempting the repair.

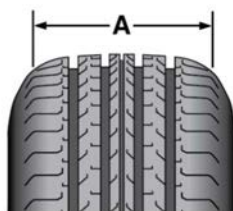
Your vehicle may not be equipped with a spare tyre, in its place you will find a tyre repair kit. The tyre repair kit can be used to repair **one** tyre and it is essential that you read the following guide before attempting a tyre repair.

The tyre repair kit is located in the underfloor area of the luggage compartment and can seal most punctures with a maximum diameter of 6 mm.

Note: The sealant used in the tyre repair kit has a shelf life and the expiry date is shown on the tyre sealant bottle. Make sure that the container is replaced before the expiry date.

TYRE REPAIR KIT SAFETY INFORMATION

-  Some tyre damage may only be partially sealed, or may not seal at all, depending on the amount and type of damage. Any loss of tyre pressure can seriously affect vehicle safety.
-  Do not use the tyre repair kit if the tyre has been damaged by driving while under-inflated.



A - Tyre tread area.

-  Only use the tyre repair kit to seal damage located within the tyre tread area (A).
-  Do not use the tyre repair kit to seal damage to the tyre sidewall.
-  Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) when a repaired tyre is fitted to the vehicle.
-  The maximum distance that should be driven when a repaired tyre is fitted, is 200 km (125 miles).
-  When a repaired tyre is fitted, drive with caution and avoid sudden braking or steering manoeuvres.
-  Only use the tyre repair kit for the vehicle with which it was supplied.
-  Do not use the tyre repair kit for any other purpose than tyre repair.
-  Never leave the tyre repair kit unattended when in use.
-  Only use the tyre repair kit within the -30°C to +70°C temperature range.
-  Always keep children and animals at a safe distance from the tyre repair kit when in use.
-  Do not stand directly beside the compressor when it is operating.
-  Check the tyre sidewall prior to inflation. If any cracks, damage or deformities are apparent, do not inflate the tyre.
-  Watch the tyre sidewall during inflation. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage, or deformities appear, switch off the compressor and deflate the tyre. Do not continue to use the tyre.

USING THE TYRE REPAIR KIT

-  Avoid skin contact with the sealant which contains natural rubber latex.

Tyre repair kit

- ⚠ Before attempting a tyre repair, make sure that the vehicle is parked safely, as far away from passing traffic as possible.
- ⚠ Make sure that the parking brake is applied and transmission Park (P) is selected.
- ⚠ Do not attempt to remove foreign objects such as nails, screws, etc. from the tyre.
- ⚠ Always run the engine when using the compressor, unless the vehicle is in an enclosed or poorly ventilated space, as this may cause asphyxiation.
- ⚠ To prevent overheating, do not operate the compressor continuously for longer than 10 minutes.

Note: All vehicle drivers and occupants should be made aware that a temporary repair has been made to a tyre fitted to the vehicle. They should also be made aware of the special driving conditions imposed when using a repaired tyre.

REPAIR PROCEDURE

- ⚠ **Check the tyre sidewall prior to inflation. If there are any cracks, bumps or similar damage, do not attempt to inflate the tyre. Do not stand directly beside the tyre while the compressor is pumping. Watch the tyre sidewall. If any cracks, bumps or similar damage appear, switch off the compressor and let the air out by means of the pressure relief valve. Do not continue to use the tyre.**

- ⚠ **If the tyre inflation pressure does not reach 1.8 bar (26 psi, 180 kPa) within a maximum of 10 minutes, the tyre may have suffered excessive damage. A temporary repair will not be possible, and the vehicle should not be driven until the tyre has been replaced.**

1. Open the tyre repair kit and peel off the maximum speed label. Attach the label to the fascia in the driver's field of vision. Take care not to obstruct any of the instruments or warning lamps.
2. Uncoil the compressor power cable and the inflation hose.
3. Unscrew the orange cap from the sealant bottle receiver and the sealant bottle cap.
4. Screw the sealant bottle into the receiver (clockwise) until tight.

Note: Screwing the bottle onto the receiver will pierce the bottle's seal. Once the receiver has been fitted, a ratchet prevents it from being removed.

5. Remove the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
6. Remove the protective cap from the inflation hose. Connect the inflation hose to the tyre valve making sure that the hose is screwed on firmly.
7. Make sure that the compressor switch is in the off (O) position, insert the power cable connector into an auxiliary power socket, see **64, AUXILIARY POWER SOCKETS**. Then switch on the ignition and start the engine unless the vehicle is in an enclosed area.
8. Switch on the compressor switch to the (I) position.
9. Inflate the tyre to a minimum of 1.8 bar (26 psi, 180 kPa) and a maximum of 3.5 bar (51 psi, 350 kPa).

Tyre repair kit

Note: When pumping the sealant through the tyre valve, the pressure may rise up to 6 bar (87 psi, 600 kPa). The pressure will drop again after approximately 30 seconds.

10. During the inflation, switch the compressor off briefly, to check the tyre pressure using the gauge mounted on the compressor.

Note: It should not take longer than 10 minutes to inflate the tyre. If, after 10 minutes, the tyre has not yet reached minimum pressure, the tyre should not be used.

11. Once the tyre has been inflated to the required pressure, switch off the compressor. If desired, the ignition may be switched off after the compressor has been switched off.
12. Remove the power connector from the auxiliary power socket.
13. Remove the inflation hose from the tyre valve, by unscrewing it as quickly as possible (counter-clockwise).
14. Replace the inflation hose protective cap and the tyre valve cap.
15. Make sure that the tyre repair kit (including the bottle and receiver caps) are placed securely in the vehicle. You will need to use the kit to check the tyre pressure after a maximum of 10 km (6 miles), so make sure they are easily accessible.
16. Immediately drive the vehicle for a maximum of 3 km (2 miles), to allow the sealant to coat the inner surface of the tyre and form a seal at the puncture.

CHECKING THE TYRE PRESSURE AFTER A REPAIR



When driving the vehicle, if you experience vibrations, abnormal steering, or noises, reduce speed immediately. Drive with extreme caution and reduced speed, to the first safe place to stop the vehicle. Visually examine the tyre and check its pressure. If there are any signs of damage or deformity to the tyre or the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar (19 psi, 130 kPa), do not continue driving.



Consult a tyre repair centre or your Retailer/Authorised Repairer, for advice concerning the replacement of a tyre after using a tyre repair kit.

1. Drive the vehicle for a maximum of 3 km (2 miles) then stop in a safe place. Carry out a visual examination of the tyre's condition.
2. Remove the tyre repair kit from the vehicle.
3. Screw the inflation hose connector firmly onto the tyre valve.
4. Read the tyre pressure from the gauge.
5. If the pressure of the sealant filled tyre is above 1.3 bar (19 psi, 130 kPa) adjust the pressure to the correct value. If there are signs of damage or deformity to the tyre or the tyre pressure is below 1.3 bar do not continue driving.
6. Make sure that the compressor switch is in the Off (O) position and insert the power cable connector into the auxiliary power socket. Then switch on the ignition and start the engine unless the vehicle is in an enclosed area.
7. Switch the compressor to On (I) and inflate the tyre to the correct pressure. See 227, TYRE PRESSURES.

Tyre repair kit

8. To check the tyre pressure, switch off the compressor then read the pressure from the gauge.
9. When the compressor is off, if the tyre pressure is too high, release the required amount of pressure using the pressure release valve.
10. Once the tyre is inflated to the correct pressure, switch off the compressor and remove the power plug from the auxiliary socket.

Note: *The use of the tyre repair kit sealant may lead to error prompts and incorrect readings of the Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS). Therefore, use the tyre repair kit pressure gauge to check and adjust the damaged tyre's inflation pressure.*

11. Unscrew the inflation hose connector from the tyre valve, replace the tyre valve cap and the inflation hose connector protective cap.
12. Make sure that the tyre repair kit is placed securely in the vehicle.
13. Drive to the nearest tyre repair centre or Retailer/Authorised Repairer, for a replacement tyre to be fitted. Make sure that you make the repair centre aware that the tyre repair kit has been used before the tyre is removed.
14. The tyre inflation hose, the receiver and the sealant bottle must be replaced once a new tyre has been fitted.



Only sealant bottles which are completely empty should be disposed of with normal household waste. Sealant bottles which contain some sealant, and the tyre inflation hose, should be disposed of by a tyre specialist or your Retailer/Authorised Repairer, in compliance with local waste disposal regulations.

Wheel changing

WHEEL CHANGING SAFETY

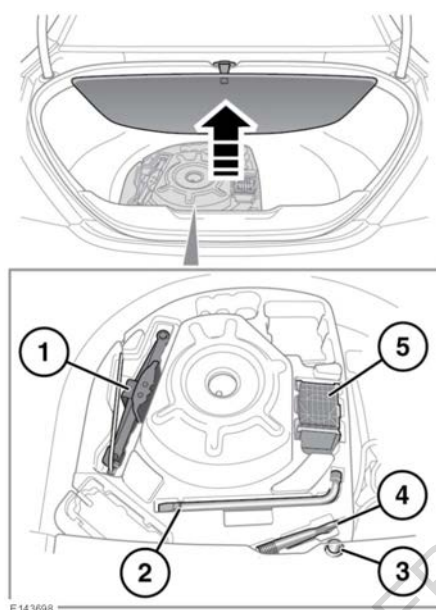
Before raising the vehicle, or changing a wheel make sure that you read, and comply with the following warnings.

-  Always find a safe place to stop, off the highway and away from traffic.
-  Make sure that the vehicle and jack are both on firm level ground.
-  Apply the parking brake, and engage Park (P).
-  Switch on the hazard warning lamps.
-  Make sure that the front wheels are in the straight ahead position, and engage the steering lock.
-  Make sure that all passengers, and animals, are out of the vehicle and in a safe place away from the highway.
-  Place a warning triangle at a suitable distance behind the vehicle, facing towards oncoming traffic.
-  When one rear wheel is lifted off the ground the selection P (Park) position will not prevent the vehicle from moving and possibly slipping off the jack as the park brake only operates on the rear wheels. Use the wheel chock when jacking the vehicle.
-  Always chock the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be changed, using the wheel chock supplied in the tool kit. Chock the front of a front wheel, or the rear of a rear wheel.
-  If jacking the vehicle on a slight slope is unavoidable, place chocks on the downhill side of the two opposite wheels. An additional chock will be needed.

-  Never place anything between the jack and the ground, or the jack and the vehicle.
-  Do not attempt to raise the vehicle unless the jack head is fully engaged in the jacking point. Only jack the vehicle using the approved jacking points.
-  Remove the spare wheel prior to jacking the vehicle, to avoid destabilising the vehicle when raised.
-  Take care when lifting the spare wheel, and removing the punctured wheel. The wheels are heavy, and can cause injuries if not handled correctly.
-  Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported only by a jack.
-  **WARNING - THAT NO PERSON SHOULD PLACE ANY PORTION OF THEIR BODY UNDER A VEHICLE THAT IS SUPPORTED BY A JACK.**
-  Take care when loosening the wheel nuts. The wheel brace may slip off if not properly attached, and the wheel nuts may release suddenly. Either unexpected movement may cause an injury.
-  After use, the tool kit should be returned to the under floor storage area and correctly stowed.
-  Always make sure replacement tyres have the correct rating and specifications (e.g. load index, size, speed rating) for your vehicle.

Wheel changing

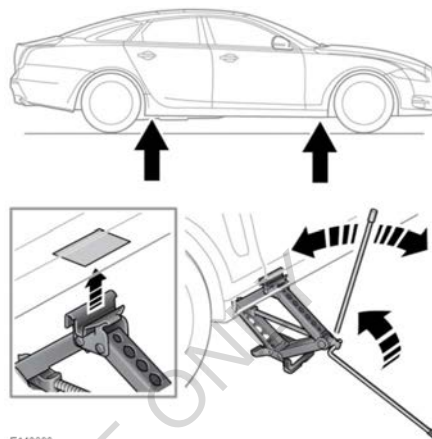
WHEEL CHANGING



1. Jack: Observe the instructions printed on the jack.
2. Wheel brace.
3. Locking wheel nut adaptor.
4. Towing eye.
5. Wheel chock.

To remove the spare wheel, unscrew and remove the bolt through the centre.

Before raising the vehicle slacken but do not remove the wheel nuts.



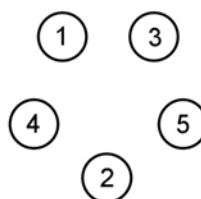
E143699

There are four jacking points on the underside of the floor. Two indented, triangular indicators are provided on each sill cover. These indicate the location for the jack.

Carefully raise the vehicle by turning the jack handle. Stop jacking the vehicle when the tyre just clears the ground. Minimum tyre lift gives maximum vehicle stability.

Note: To remove the centre badge use the plastic tipped end of the wheel nut wrench handle, push the centre badge from its housing from the inside of the wheel.

Using the wheel nut wrench, lightly tighten the wheel nuts alternately using the sequence shown in the illustration.



E132675

Wheel changing

Lower the jack, then tighten the wheel nuts fully, in the same sequence shown. Do not overtighten by using foot pressure or extension bars on the wheel nut wrench.

At the earliest opportunity have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 125 Nm (92 lb.ft).

This torque must not be exceeded.

LOCKING WHEEL NUTS

Locking wheel nuts can be removed and installed using only the special adapter provided in the tool kit.

Note: When the vehicle is first supplied, the adapter may be stored in the glove compartment. It should be removed and stored in the tool kit as soon as possible.

Note: A code number is stamped onto the underside of the adapter. This number should be recorded in the Service Record and Warranty Benefits supplied with the literature pack. If a replacement adapter is required, you will be asked to quote this number.

IMPORTANT – USE OF SPARE TYRE

Observe the following warnings before using the temporary spare wheel:

 **Adhere to the instructions on the temporary spare warning label, affixed to the wheel. Failure to do so may cause vehicle instability and/or tyre failure.**

 **Where fitted the temporary use spare wheel is FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY. Drive with caution while the temporary spare wheel is fitted. Ensure that an original size wheel and tyre are fitted as soon as possible.**



Do not fit more than one temporary spare wheel to the vehicle at any one time.



Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) while the temporary spare wheel is fitted.



The tyre pressure in the temporary spare wheel should be 4.2 bar (60 psi/420 kPa).



DSC must be switched on while the temporary spare wheel is in use.



Traction devices such as snow chains cannot be used with a temporary spare wheel.

Vehicle recovery

TOWING EYES



The towing eye at the front of the vehicle is designed for on-road recovery only.



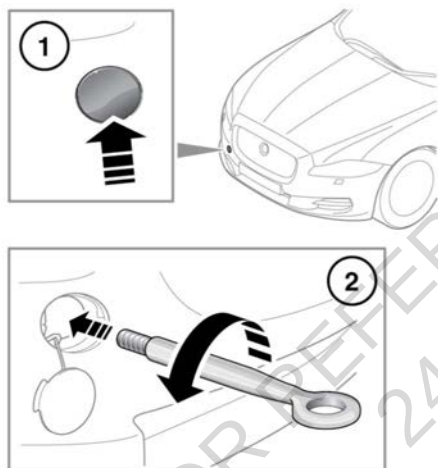
Do not tow the vehicle on all four wheels.

The recommended method for recovery/transportation of the vehicle, is on a transporter or trailer designed for that purpose.

Make sure that transportation is carried out by suitably qualified persons, and that the vehicle is secured correctly.

ATTACHING THE FRONT TOWING EYE

The towing eye is included in the tool kit, located in the under-floor area of the luggage compartment.



E144619

1. Pop out the cover in the front bumper.
2. Locate the towing eye through the bumper and screw the towing eye anticlockwise into its fixing, until secure.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



Only use the lashing points, or over-wheel lashings or wheel chocks. Lashing over the body or suspension is not permissible as settling of the air suspension will cause lashing straps to slacken.

After a collision

BEFORE STARTING OR DRIVING



If the vehicle is involved in a collision it should be checked by a Retailer/Authorised repairer or suitably qualified personnel, before starting or driving.

PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION SYSTEM

The bumper includes sensors that detect a collision with a pedestrian and includes energy absorbing foam and plastics in its construction, to reduce leg injuries.

During a pedestrian collision, the sensors initiate a bonnet deployment system that releases the bonnet hinge system and raises the rear edge of the bonnet by approximately 130 mm.

This increases the gap between the bonnet and the components within the engine compartment to create a cushion to mitigate injury caused to the pedestrian.

The bonnet deployment system is active only when the ignition is on and the vehicle is driven between the speeds of approximately 25 km/h (16 mph) and 50 km/h (31 mph).

AFTER DEPLOYMENT OF THE PEDESTRIAN PROTECTION SYSTEM



Do not attempt to open the bonnet if the pedestrian protection system has been deployed.

The vehicle must be stopped as soon as it is safe to do so.

The hazard warning lamps will be activated and can only be switched off by pressing the engine START/STOP button to switch the engine off and on again.

A warning message **CHECK PEDESTRIAN SYSTEM** will appear on the message centre and the vehicle should be transported to the nearest Retailer/Authorised Repairer. The vehicle must not be driven when the bonnet has been deployed.

Note: If the warning message **CHECK PEDESTRIAN SYSTEM** appears in the message centre when the bonnet has not been deployed, the vehicle should be taken to the nearest Retailer/Authorised Repairer immediately. It can be driven.

If any significant damage occurs to the front bumper it should be inspected by a Retailer/Authorised Repairer as soon as possible.

SERVICE DATA RECORDING

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brakes.

In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Jaguar Land Rover Limited and service and repair facilities may access vehicle diagnostic information through a direct connection to your vehicle.

EVENT DATA RECORDING

Please be advised that this vehicle incorporates an Event Data Recorder (EDR). An EDR stores driving information at the moment of an accident (driving speed, application of brake pedal and accelerator control etc.), and enables confirmation of the information stored. EDR information helps to understand the circumstances of an accident more clearly. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

After a collision

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seat belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was travelling.

Note: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Other parties may seek to access the information independently of **Jaguar Land Rover Limited**.

Vehicle labels

LABEL LOCATIONS



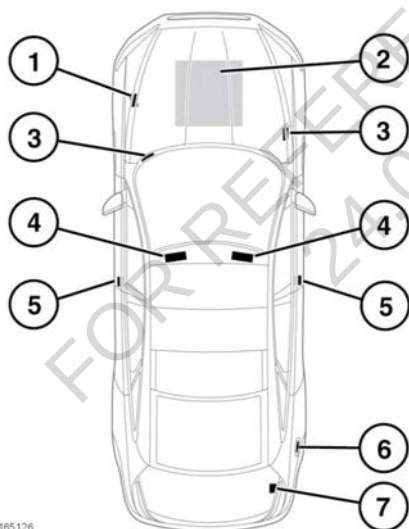
Warning labels attached to your vehicle bearing this symbol mean: Do not touch or adjust components until you have read the relevant instructions in the handbook.



Labels showing this symbol indicate that the ignition system utilises very high voltages. Do not touch any ignition components while the starter switch is turned on.

Labels are applied to draw your attention to important subjects (e.g. tyre pressures, airbags, engine compartment hazards, etc.).

Additional information labels may also be found at these locations.



E165126

1. Air conditioning label - Left-side inner wing.
2. Engine number:
2.0 litre petrol, stamped into the engine mounting flange.

All other engines, located on the front of the right-side cam cover.

3. The VIN is stamped on a plate which is visible through the lowest part of the left side of the front windscreen. The VIN is also stamped into the right side suspension tower.

Note: If you need to communicate with a Retailer/Authorised Repairer, you may be asked to quote the VIN number.

4. Airbag label - Sun visor.
5. Vehicle Identification plate, including the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) and recommended maximum vehicle weights - Located on the left-side B pillar.
Passenger airbag label - Passenger side.
Airbag warning label - Base of B pillar on the driver's side.
Tyre pressure label - Driver's side.
6. Fuel specification label - Inner face of fuel filler flap.
7. Battery warning symbols - Top face of battery.

It is important that you are familiar with these subjects to make sure that your vehicle and its features are used safely. Using the index at the back of this handbook, refer to the relevant topic for more information.

TRANSMISSION NUMBER

The transmission number is located on a label attached to the transmission casing.

VEHICLE BUILD DATE PLATE

The vehicle built date is shown on the VIN plate.



Technical specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS

	Number of cylinders	Displacement (cc)	Compression ratio
2.0L Petrol	4	1 999	10:1
3.0L Petrol (SC)	6	2 995	10.5:1
5.0L Petrol (SC)	8	5 000	9.5:1
3.0L Diesel	6	2 993	16.1:1

SC - Supercharged.

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

Technical specifications

LUBRICANTS AND FLUIDS

Part	Engine variant	Specification
Engine oil	2.0L Petrol	SAE 5W-30 engine oil meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.03.5003.
	3.0L (SC) Petrol	SAE 0W-20 engine oil meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.51.5122.
	5.0L (SC) Petrol	SAE 0W-20 engine oil meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.51.5122.
	3.0L Diesel with Diesel particulate filter	SAE 5W-30 engine oil meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.03.5005. If unavailable SAE 5W-30 engine oil meeting specification ACEA C2 may be used.
	3.0L Diesel without Diesel particulate filter	SAE 5W-30 engine oil meeting Jaguar Land Rover specification STJLR.03.5003. If unavailable SAE 5W-30 engine oil meeting specification ACEA A5/B5 may be used.
Diesel exhaust fluid	Diesel	AdBlue®, meeting ISO standard 22241-1. Diesel exhaust fluid is also known as DEF, AdBlue, AUS 32 and ARLA 32.
Power steering fluid	All vehicles	Jaguar recommends Mobil ATF320 PAS fluid.
Brake fluid	All vehicles	Use Jaguar brake fluid. If unavailable for topping up, a Low Viscosity, DOT4 brake fluid that meets the requirements of ISO 4925 class 6 may be used.
Washer fluid	All vehicles	Screen wash with frost protection, diluted with clean water as specified on the bottle.
Engine coolant fluid	All vehicles	50% mixture of water and antifreeze, specification WSS M97B44 (coloured orange) Extended Life Coolant.
If in doubt about the required specification of a lubricant or fluid for this vehicle, seek advice from a Retailer/Authorised Repairer.		

SC - Supercharged

Castrol EDGE Professional exclusively recommended by Jaguar.



E176575



Technical specifications

WEIGHTS

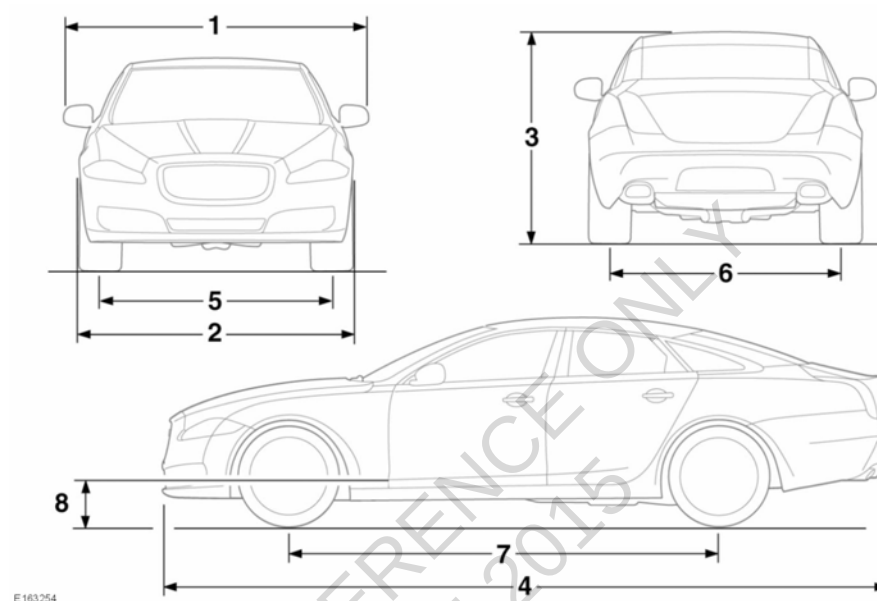
Variant	Vehicle weight from kg	Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) ¹ kg	Maximum front axle load ² kg	Maximum rear axle load ² kg
Standard wheelbase				
3.0L Diesel	1 835	2 400	1 180	1 280
2.0L Petrol	1 735	2 280	1 080	1 280
3.0L Petrol (SC)	1 765	2 350	1 130	1 320
3.0L Petrol (SC) AWD	1 865	2 430	1 180	1 320
5.0L Petrol (SC)	1 875	2 400	1 180	1 320
Long wheelbase				
3.0L Diesel	1 860	2 450	1 180	1 320
2.0L Petrol	1 755	2 320	1 080	1 300
3.0L Petrol (SC)	1 775	2 400	1 130	1 320
3.0L Petrol (SC) AWD	1 875	2 450	1 200	1 320
5.0L Petrol (SC)	1 885	2 450	1 180	1 320
Max. luggage compartment load (all vehicles): 35 kg. The maximum permitted luggage compartment load can be exceeded, provided the requirements regarding the maximum permissible axle weights and tyre pressures are followed.				
¹ The maximum permissible weight of the vehicle including passengers and load. ² The front and rear axle maximum loads can not be reached simultaneously as this will exceed the GVW limit.				

SC - Supercharged, **AWD** - All Wheel Drive.

Note: This vehicle is *not* designed to be used as a towing vehicle, therefore a Gross Train Weight is not applicable.

Technical specifications

DIMENSIONS



Item	Description	Measurement (mm)
1	Width	2 105
2	Width with mirrors folded	1 950
3	Overall height	
	Long wheelbase	1 460
	Standard wheelbase	1 460
4	Overall length	
	Long wheelbase	5 255
	Standard wheelbase	5 130
5	Track - front	1 626
6	Track - rear	1 604
7	Wheelbase	
	Long wheelbase	3 157
	Standard wheelbase	3 032



Technical specifications

Item	Description	Measurement (mm)
8	Maximum wading depth*	300
-	Turning circle (kerb to kerb)	
	Long wheelbase	12.3 metres
	Long wheelbase (AWD)	12.3 metres
	Standard wheelbase	11.9 metres
	Standard wheelbase (AWD)	11.9 metres
*Maximum wading speed is 7 km/h (4 mph).		

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

Technical specifications

CAPACITIES

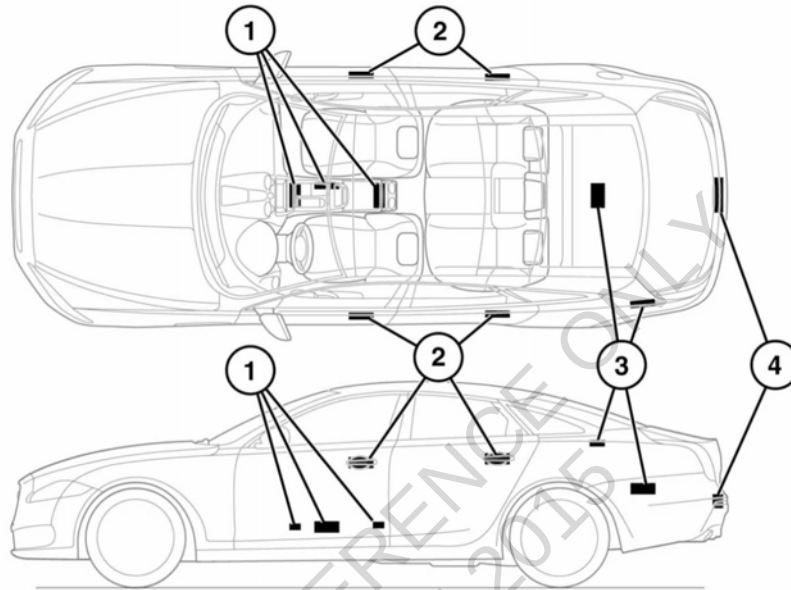
Item	Variant	Capacity
Fuel tank (usable)	Diesel	77 litres
	Petrol	80 litres
Fuel tank reserve (when the fuel gauge indicates empty)	Diesel	4 litres
	Petrol	4 litres
Engine oil refill and filter change	3.0L Diesel	6.6 litres
	2.0L Petrol	5.4 litres
	3.0L (SC) Petrol	7.25 litres
	3.0L (SC) Petrol AWD	6.5 litres
	5.0L (SC) Petrol	7.25 litres
Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF)	Diesel	17 litres
Washer reservoir	All models	3 litres
Engine cooling system (fill from dry)	3.0L Diesel	12.3 litres
	2.0L Petrol	8.1 litres
	3.0L (SC) Petrol	13.5 litres
	3.0L (SC) Petrol AWD	13 litres
	5.0L (SC) Petrol	13.2 litres
Engine cooling system (service fill)	3.0L Diesel	9 litres
	2.0L Petrol	6.2 litres
	3.0L (SC) Petrol	8.9 litres
	3.0L (SC) Petrol AWD	9 litres
	5.0L (SC) Petrol - both drain points used	9 litres

SC - Supercharged, **AWD** - All wheel drive.

The quoted capacities are approximate and provided as a guide only. All levels must be checked using the level marks or information displayed in the Message centre, as applicable.

Technical specifications

SMART KEY TRANSMITTER LOCATIONS



E132064

1. Cabin transmitters.
2. Door handle transmitters.
3. Luggage compartment interior transmitters.
4. Luggage compartment exterior transmitter.



Any person fitted with an implanted medical device should ensure that the device is kept at a distance of at least 22 cm (8.7 inches) away from any transmitter mounted in the vehicle. This is to avoid any possibility of interference between the system and device.

Technical specifications

RADIO FREQUENCY SPECTRUM REGULATION STATEMENTS

Service	Frequency band	Max. Output	Antenna position	Specific conditions
4m VHF	70 - 85 MHz	30 W/CW 40 W/AM	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
2m VHF	142 - 175 MHz	30 W/CW 40 W/AM	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
TETRA	380 - 422 MHz	10 W/CW 10 W/PM	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
UHF	450 - 470 MHz	10 W/CW	Anywhere on the metallic part of the roof.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
Bluetooth	2400 - 2483.5 MHz	10 mW	Anywhere on the vehicle.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
Road telematics	5795 - 5815 MHz	2 W eirp	Anywhere close to a glazed area that does not contain antennas or conductive glass.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.
Road telematics	63 - 64 GHz	2 W eirp	Anywhere close to a glazed area that does not contain antennas or conductive glass.	Transmitter, harness and antenna installation to the requirements of ISO/TS 21609.

South Korea only

Omnidirectional transmission or point-to-multipoint transmission is prohibited according to the law.

Page 1 of 1



Lear Corporation
Electronics Systems Division
21557 Telegraph Road
Farmers Branch, TX 75234-1418
USA
Phone: (214) 447-1500

Date: February 6, 2009

INFORMATION TO BE INCLUDED IN THE END USER'S MANUAL

The following information must be included in the end product user's manual to ensure continued FCC and Industry Canada regulatory compliance. The ID numbers must be included in the manual if the device label is not readily accessible to the end user. The compliance paragraphs below must be included in the user's manual.

The following user's manual statements are provided by Lear Corporation to Jaguar Land Rover electronically after certification.

Key fobs

Land Rover, Range Rover,
FCC ID: KOBJTF10A (Range Rover, Land Rover)
IC: 3521A-JTF10B (Jaguar)
IC: 3521A-JTF10A (Range Rover, Land Rover)
Model #: AH22-15K601A (Range Rover)
Model #: AH22-15K601A (Land Rover)
Model #: AV93-15K601A (Jaguar)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.



Lear Corporation
Electronics Systems Division
21557 Telegraph Road
Farmers Branch, TX 75234-1418
USA
Phone: (214) 447-1500

RKE Receiver

Land Rover, Range Rover, Jaguar
FCC ID: KOBJLR09A
IC: 3521-JLR09A
Model #: AH42-15K602-A

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Passive Entry / Passive Start Module

Land Rover, Range Rover, Jaguar
FCC ID: KOBJBG10A
IC: 3521-JBG10A
Model #: AH22-19H440 (PEPS)
Model #: AH42-19H440 (Passive Start ONLY)
FCC ID: KOBJBG10B
IC: 3521-JBG10B
Model #: AH22-19H440 (PEPS)
Model #: AH42-19H440 (Passive Start ONLY)

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada.

Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

Type approval

R

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC
Manufacturer: Lear Corporation
Type Designation / FCC ID: KOB/JBG10B
Model Numbers: SE0770257, 19H440, AH22-19H440, AH22-19H440-AD, AH22-19H440-AE
Description / Intended Use: Remote Function Actuator (RFA), passive keyless entry and start system low frequency initiator
Trademarks: Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar
Applied Standards: European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC
ETSI EN 60950
ETSI EN 300 330
CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03
AS/NZS 4268
FCC Regulations 47 CFR Part 15
Responsible Person: Kevin Cotton
Lear Corporation
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, Michigan 48033
United States of America

Hereby, Lear Corporation declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC.

Signed: *Kevin Cotton*
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: 27 March 2009

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC
Manufacturer: Lear Corporation
Type Designation / FCC ID: KOB/JBG10A
Model Numbers: SE0770237, 19H440, AH22-19H440-AC, AH22-19H440-AD, AH22-19H440, AH22-19H440
Description / Intended Use: Remote Function Actuator (RFA), passive keyless entry and start system low frequency initiator
Trademarks: Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar
Applied Standards: European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC
ETSI EN 60950
ETSI EN 300 330
CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03
AS/NZS 4268
FCC Regulations 47 CFR Part 15
Responsible Person: Kevin Cotton
Lear Corporation
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, Michigan 48033
United States of America

Hereby, Lear Corporation declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC.

Signed: *Kevin Cotton*
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: 27 March 2009

Type approval

E132683

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC
Manufacturer: Lear Corporation
Type Designation: 5E0760127
Model Numbers: 5E0760127, 15K602, AH42-15K602-B, AH42-15K602-BC
Description / Intended Use: RF Receiver (RFR), used in passive entry and passive start, remote keyless entry, and tire pressure monitoring systems
Trademarks: Land Rover / Range Rover / Jaguar
Applied Standards: European Commission Directive 2006/28/EC
ETSI EN 60950
ETSI EN 300 220
CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03
ASINZS 4288
Responsible Person: Kevin Cotton
Lear Corporation
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, Michigan 48033
United States of America

Hereby, Lear Corporation declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC

Signed: *Kevin Cotton*
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: 27 March 2009

EC Declaration of Conformity

EC Directive: 1999/5/EC
Manufacturer: Lear Corporation
Type Designation: 15K601
Model Numbers: 5E0850127, 5E0850127, 15K601-BB, AH42-15K601-BB, AH42-15K601-BC, AH42-15K601-BC
Description / Intended Use: Passive Key (PK) / Customer Identification Device (CID), passive keyless entry system keyfob
Trademarks: Land Rover / Range Rover
Applied Standards: CEPT/ERC/REC 70-03
ETSI EN 60950
ETSI EN 300 220
ETSI EN 301 488
IEC EN 60950
ASINZS 4288
Responsible Person: Kevin Cotton
Lear Corporation
21557 Telegraph Road
Southfield, Michigan 48033
United States of America

Hereby, Lear Corporation declares that the product referenced above is in compliance with the essential requirements of Directive 1999/5/EC, on the approximation of the laws of the member states relating to Directive 1999/5/EC

Signed: *Kevin Cotton*
Kevin Cotton, Lear Corporation

Date: 26 March 2009

Type approval

快特電波股份有限公司
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申請者：Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱：Range Rover / SE0860227
四、廠牌/型號：Range Rover / SE0860227
五、發射功率（電場強度）：315MHz; 84.195dBuV/m(Peak)
六、工作頻率：315MHz

七、發證日期：98年06月02日
八、審驗合格標識式樣：

說明：
1. 請依上列標識式樣自製標籤，標貼於申請器材本體明顯處，如標籤或公司標列。
2. 標識式樣應符合低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率射頻電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，除罰鍰(備)並得停止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 違章廠商應於備置該產品供目後檢附。
5. 本型式認證證明及審驗合格標識應與原標識共同使用，不得將本證明貼於他人之同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。
審驗合格標籤委員簽章處，得授與他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：
1. 本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 L70002 3.4.2 節之規定。
2. 本認證機構係指國家通訊傳播委員會，核發本型式認證證明。
3. 本器材所使用圖文式樣應與圖文式樣一致如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

快特電波股份有限公司
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申請者：Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱：LEAR / SE0770337
四、廠牌/型號：LEAR / SE0770337
五、發射功率（電場強度）：125KHz; 61.5dBuV/m(Average)
六、工作頻率：125KHz

七、發證日期：98年06月02日
八、審驗合格標識式樣：

說明：
1. 請依上列標識式樣自製標籤，標貼於申請器材本體明顯處，如標籤或公司標列。
2. 標識式樣應符合低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率射頻電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，除罰鍰(備)並得停止其型式認證證明或型式認證標籤。
4. 違章廠商應於備置該產品供目後檢附。
5. 本型式認證證明及審驗合格標識應與原標識共同使用，不得將本證明貼於他人之同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。
審驗合格標籤委員簽章處，得授與他人於同廠牌同型號之器材，使用其合格標籤。

備註：
1. 本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 L70002 2.8 節之規定。
2. 本認證機構係指國家通訊傳播委員會，核發本型式認證證明。
3. 本器材所使用圖文式樣應與圖文式樣一致如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

E132684

Type approval

快特電波股份有限公司
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申請者：Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱：RFA (Positive Start & Start Module)
四、廠牌/型號：LEAR / 510770237
五、發射功率 (電場強度)：125KHz; 63.3dBuV/m(Average)
六、工作頻率：125KHz

七、發證日期：98年06月02日
八、審驗合格標識式樣：

說明：
1. 請依上列條式填寫自製標識，標貼於申請器材本體明顯處，如得標章或公司印列。
2. 照型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得停止其型式認證證明或型式認證標識。
4. 違章廠商應自備該產品所日後供到。
5. 本型式認證證明或審驗合格標識僅供使用，不得轉讓他人，任何廠商均型號之器材，使用其合格標識，審驗機構委員會備查，得授權他人任何廠商均型號之器材，使用其合格標識。

備註：
1. 本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002.3.4.2節之規定。
2. 本驗證機構係由國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3. 本器材使用固定式或無線電牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

快特電波股份有限公司
低功率射頻電機型式認證證明

一、申請者：Lear Corporation
二、製造廠商：Lear Corporation
三、器材名稱：Range Rover / 510050227
四、廠牌/型號：Range Rover / 510050227
五、發射功率 (電場強度)：315MHz; 84.195dBuV/m(Peak)
六、工作頻率：315MHz

七、發證日期：98年06月02日
八、審驗合格標識式樣：

說明：
1. 請依上列條式填寫自製標識，標貼於申請器材本體明顯處，如得標章或公司印列。
2. 照型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，其型號、設計、射頻性能如有變更，應重新申請型式認證。
3. 違反低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法之規定，擅自使用或變更無線電頻率、電功率者，除依電信法規定處罰外，驗證機關(構)並得停止其型式認證證明或型式認證標識。
4. 違章廠商應自備該產品所日後供到。
5. 本型式認證證明或審驗合格標識僅供使用，不得轉讓他人，任何廠商均型號之器材，使用其合格標識，審驗機構委員會備查，得授權他人任何廠商均型號之器材，使用其合格標識。

備註：
1. 本器材符合低功率射頻電機技術規範 LP0002.3.4.2節之規定。
2. 本驗證機構係由國家通訊傳播委員會委託，核發本型式認證證明。
3. 本器材使用固定式或無線電牌/型號如下：
Lear Corporation / N/A

E132685

Type approval

E132686



Continental Automotive GmbH - Postfach 10 551 - 93055 Regensburg

Kolke Designer
AGB 1000-02
Phone +49 (0)41 790-6099
Fax +49 (0)41 790-136699
dagmar.kolke@continental-corporation.com

Date: July 29, 2008
Your message dated: July 29, 2008
Our reference: Your reference:

Declaration of Conformity in accordance with Directive 1999/5/EC (R&TTE Directive)

Manufacturer: Continental Automotive GmbH
Address: Siemensstrasse 12
D-93055 Regensburg
Germany
Product type designation: S180 052 020 A
Intended use: Tire Pressure System

The product mentioned above complies with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC, when used for its intended purpose:

Health and safety pursuant to §3.1. a:
Applied standard(s): EN 60950-1: 2006
Electromagnetic compatibility pursuant to § 3.1. b:
Applied standard(s): EN 301 489 -1: V1.6.1 (2005-09)
EN 301 489 -3: V1.4.1 (2002-08)
Efficient use of spectrum pursuant to § 3.2:
Applied standard(s): EN 300 220 -1: V2.1.1 (2006-04)
EN 300 220 -2: V2.1.1 (2006-04)

The following marking applies to the above mentioned product:



Continental Automotive GmbH
Regensburg, 2008-07-29

Signature: *Andreas Woll*
Andreas Woll
Executive Vice President
Body & Security

Continental Automotive GmbH
Postfach 10 551
93055 Regensburg
www.continental-corporation.com

Signature: *Norbert Müller*
Norbert Müller
Director Product Group 3
Body & Security

Continental Automotive GmbH
Postfach 10 551
93055 Regensburg
www.continental-corporation.com



Label to be used on the following products only:

- citizen band radio equipment
- cellular equipment
- trunk radio equipment
- spread spectrum devices
- leased channel radio equipment
- cordless telephone
- wireless security devices
- wireless microphone
- radio-control equipment
- medical & biology telemetry equipment

Type approval

E143645

ALPINE ELECTRONICS, INC.
20-1 Yoshima 4-chome, Naga-City, Yokohama 220-1192, Japan
Phone: (+81) 246-36-4111 Fax: (+81) 246-36-6000

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY
For

CE

Product: Bluetooth Module
Model: IAN2.1 BT PWB EU3

Technical Construction file held by
ALPINE Electronics, Inc.
20-1, Yoshima-Kogyodanchi, Iwaki-shi
Fukushima 970-1192 Japan

Supplied by
ALPINE Electronics, Inc.
20-1, Yoshima-Kogyodanchi, Iwaki-shi
Fukushima 970-1192 Japan

Notified Body - R&TTE Directive N/A

Standard used for comply
EN60955:2002+Am1.2006+Am2.2010

R&TTE Directive
(Article 3.1(a) Safety)
EN301-489-1 V1.8.1:2008-04
R&TTE Directive
(Article 3.1(b) EMC)
EN301-489-17 V2.1.1:2009-05
R&TTE Directive
(Article 3.2 Spectrum)
EN300 328 V1.7.1:2006-10

Means of Conformity
We declare under our sole responsibility that the Product (s) is conformity with the
essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the
Radio and Telecommunication Terminal Equipment (R&TTE) Directive (1999/5/EC).

Date of issue: 08 July 2011

Signature of Responsible Person:
I Sawa, Takashi

Isumi Takaku
Global Engineering Strategy Office

Index

A

- About this handbook.....2
- Accessories.....193
- Active differential control.....76
- Adaptive cruise control.....83
 - ACC gap change.....84
 - automatic switch-off.....85
 - driving hints.....86
 - follow mode.....83
 - forward alert.....87
 - intelligent emergency braking.....88
 - malfunction.....87
 - queue assist.....85
 - radar detection beam issues.....86
 - resume follow mode.....85
 - resume set speed.....85
 - set speed and follow mode override.....84
- Adaptive dynamics.....78
- Adaptive front lighting system.....50
 - warning lamp.....45
- Adaptive headlamps.....50
- AdBlue®.....185
- After a collision
 - pedestrian protection system.....241
- Age degradation (tyres).....229
- Airbags
 - active head restraints.....35
 - cover cleaning.....202
 - curtain.....37
 - deployment.....36, 38
 - disability modifications.....39
 - front.....37
 - locations.....35
 - maintenance.....193
 - obstruction.....36
 - service information.....38
 - side.....37
 - warning lamp.....38, 46
- Air conditioning
 - air quality sensor.....138
 - automatic recirculation.....138
 - front.....136
- Alarm.....10, 193
 - automatic relocking and arming.....11
 - battery backed sounder.....11
 - deactivating.....11
 - passive arming.....11
 - perimeter.....11
 - security sensor fault.....12
 - tilt sensor.....11
- All surface progress control.....97–98
- Anchor points (luggage).....67
- Anti-lock braking system (ABS) warning lamp.....45
- Anti-theft system.....193
- Anti-trap protection
 - sunroof.....62
 - windows.....62
- Approach lamps.....50
- Arduous driving conditions.....195
- Audible warnings.....48
- Audio
 - AM/FM radio controls.....114
 - automatic station retune.....115
 - CD loading.....109
 - changing portable media device.....123
 - conversation assist.....110
 - DAB radio
 - controls.....116
 - settings.....117
 - dual view.....130
 - dual view controls.....130
 - end user licensing agreement.....110
 - full screen view.....125
 - licensing.....112
 - media controls.....107
 - portable media connections.....118
 - portable media controls.....120
 - portable media pairing.....122
 - portable media playing.....121
 - steering wheel controls.....108
 - TV controls.....126
- Auto lamps
 - wiper detection.....50
- Automatic locking.....6, 11
- Automatic speed limiter
 - warning lamp.....46

Index

- Automatic switch off of ACC.....85
- Automatic transmission.....74
 - gear selector.....75
 - gear shift warning lamp.....47
 - shift paddles.....75
 - temporary manual selection.....75
- Auto zoom (navigation).....169
- Auxiliary device connection.....122
- Auxiliary power sockets.....64
- B**
- Battery
 - boost starting.....214
 - care.....212
 - charging.....215
 - connecting jump leads.....213
 - disconnecting jump leads.....214
 - luggage compartment access with a discharged battery.....68
 - maintenance.....212
 - replacing.....215
 - using a starting aid.....214
 - warning lamp.....45
 - warning symbols.....212
- Battery backed sounder.....11
- Blinds.....61
 - rear window.....60
- Blind spot monitor
 - closing vehicle sensing.....94
 - displayed messages.....95
 - notification of overtaking vehicle.....93
 - sensor blockage.....95
- Bluetooth
 - compatibility.....157
 - general information.....161
 - pairing
 - via the phone.....157
 - phone
 - icons.....158
 - safety.....157
 - portable media
 - pairing.....122
 - playing.....121
- Bluetooth phone
 - call volume.....159
 - overview.....156
 - steering wheel controls.....159
- Bonnet
 - closing.....195
 - opening.....195
- Booster seats for larger children.....32
- Boost starting.....214
- Brakes
 - ABS warning lamp.....45
 - electronic brake force distribution.....79
 - emergency assist.....88
 - emergency brake assist.....79
 - fluid check.....208
 - fluid specification.....209
 - fluid top up.....209
 - handbrake.....80
 - high level brake lamp.....197
 - hill start assist.....79
 - important information.....79
 - parking brake warning lamp.....45
 - warning lamp (amber).....45
 - warning lamp (red).....44
- Breakdown assistance
 - InControl link.....179
- Bulbs
 - changing a bulb.....196
 - rear lamps.....197
- C**
- Cameras
 - proximity view.....153
 - single rear camera.....152
 - touch screen menu.....153
- Capacities.....249
 - engine oil.....249
 - fuel tank.....249
 - washer reservoir.....249
- Carpets and mats.....202
- Car-wash.....199
- CD/DVD
 - loading discs.....109

Index

CD player		
portable media pairing.....	122	
portable media playing.....	121	
Cell phone		
call volume.....	159	
icons.....	158	
overview.....	156	
steering wheel controls.....	159	
Cell phone safety.....	157	
Changing a bulb.....	196	
Changing a fuse.....	216	
Changing a wheel		
locking wheel nuts.....	239	
recommended process.....	238	
safety warnings.....	237	
Charging the vehicle battery.....	215	
Chassis number.....	243	
Child safety		
booster seats.....	32	
check list.....	32	
child seats.....	28	
ISOFIX installation.....	32	
larger children on booster seats.....	32	
lock and window inhibitor.....	28	
positioning.....	29	
recommended child seats.....	31	
tether straps.....	33	
Cleaning		
airbag covers.....	202	
alloy wheels.....	199	
automatic car wash.....	199	
carpets and mats.....	202	
engine compartment.....	199	
exterior.....	199	
paintwork.....	199	
glass.....	199	
interior.....	200–201	
leather.....	200	
park assist sensors.....	199	
parking aids sensors.....	199	
polishing.....	200	
rear screen.....	200	
removing grease.....	200	
removing stains.....	201	
removing tar.....	200	
seat belts.....	202	
sensors and cameras.....	199	
sunroof.....	200	
using a car-wash.....	199	
washer jets.....	196	
wipers.....	202	
Cleaning the wiper blades.....	202	
Climate control		
automatic recirculation.....	138	
climate seats.....	142	
front.....	136	
heated seats.....	141	
rear.....	139	
seat comfort.....	141	
Clock.....	40	
Closing		
luggage compartment.....	65	
Closing the bonnet.....	195	
Closing vehicle sensing.....	94	
Commandshift.....	74	
Condensation (headlamps).....	51	
Conformity declarations.....	252	
Connecting jump leads.....	213	
Connectivity		
connecting a sim card.....	178	
settings.....	177	
status icons.....	178	
Controls cleaning.....	200	
Convenience mode.....	7	
Coolant		
checking the level.....	207	
specification.....	208	
top up.....	208	
Covers		
refitting.....	196	
removal.....	196	
Critical warning messages.....	44	
Cruise control.....	82	
ACC driving hints.....	86	
ACC emergency braking.....	88	
ACC follow mode.....	83	
ACC gap change.....	84	
ACC radar detection beam issues.....	86	

Index

- ACC set speed and follow mode
 - override.....84
 - adaptive cruise control.....83
 - adaptive cruise control malfunction.....87
 - follow mode.....83
 - forward alert in ACC.....87
 - resume ACC follow mode.....85
 - resume ACC set speed.....85
 - using ACC.....83
 - warning lamp.....47
- Curtain airbags.....37
- D**
- DAB radio
 - settings.....117
- DAB radio controls.....116
- Data recording.....241
- Daytime running lamps.....49
- Declarations of conformity.....252
- DEF.....185
- Detection beam issues.....86
- Diesel
 - filler flap.....188
 - fuel.....185
 - glow plugs
 - warning lamp.....46
 - misfuel device.....188
 - sulphur content.....185
 - water in fuel.....187
- Diesel engines.....187
- Diesel particulate filter (DPF).....194
 - sulphur content.....185
- Differential control.....76
- Dimensions.....247
- Direction indicators.....49
 - warning lamp.....47
- Disability modifications
 - airbags.....39
- Displays.....201
- Door mirrors.....56
 - blind spot monitor.....93
 - closing vehicle sensing.....94
 - sensors.....95
- Door transceiver
 - assistance.....59
 - erase all programming.....59
 - programming.....58
 - programming a single button.....59
 - programming the garage door opener.....58
- Double locking.....9
 - full alarm.....10
- DPF.....194
- Drive away locking.....6
- Driver exit
 - deactivating intelligent stop/start.....73
- Driving
 - ACC automatic switch-off.....85
 - ACC driving hints.....86
 - ACC emergency braking.....88
 - ACC follow mode.....83
 - ACC forward alert.....87
 - ACC gap change.....84
 - ACC malfunction.....87
 - ACC queue assist.....85
 - ACC radar detection beam issues.....86
 - ACC set speed and follow mode
 - override.....84
 - activating intelligent stop/start.....72
 - active differential.....76
 - adaptive cruise control.....83
 - after a collision.....241
 - after deployment of the pedestrian protection system.....241
 - arduous conditions.....195
 - automatic speed limiter.....81
 - before starting.....241
 - blind spot monitor.....93
 - closing vehicle sensing.....94
 - blind spot monitor messages.....95
 - brakes important information.....79
 - daily checks.....194
 - deactivating intelligent stop/start.....72
 - DSC active warning lamp.....46
 - electronic brake force distribution.....79
 - emergency brake assist.....79
 - forward alert.....87
 - forward alert warning lamp.....47

Index

gear shift warning lamp.....	47	Electronic data.....	241
hill start assist.....	79	Emergency brake assist.....	79, 88
low oil pressure.....	44	Emergency call	
progress control settings.....	98	InControl link.....	179
progress control system overview.....	97	Emergency key locking.....	12
rain sensor.....	55	Emergency release	
resume ACC follow mode.....	85	luggage compartment.....	67
resume ACC set speed.....	85	Engine	
running-in.....	193	antifreeze level.....	207
sitting correctly.....	15	compartment opening.....	195
using ACC.....	83	coolant level.....	207
using cruise control.....	82	diesel.....	187
using the progress control system.....	97	diesel fuel.....	185
weekly checks.....	194	oil level.....	205
Driving abroad		petrol fuels.....	184
beam pattern.....	51	running-in.....	193
headlamps.....	51	specifications.....	244
Driving aids		starting	
traffic sign recognition.....	92	keyless start backup.....	71
Driving modes.....	90	switching off.....	70
dynamic program.....	90	Engine/transmission warning lamp.....	45
winter.....	90	Engine compartment	
Driving position memory.....	14	fluid filler locations.....	203
recalling a position.....	15	Engine compartment cleaning.....	199
Dual view.....	130	Engine covers	
controls.....	130	refitting.....	196
Dynamic program.....	90	removal.....	196
Dynamic stability control (DSC).....	76	Engine oil	
DSC active warning lamp.....	46	capacity.....	249
DSC off warning lamp.....	46	Engine starting.....	70
switching between DSC and tracDSC.....	76	failure to start.....	71
switching off.....	76	Engine temperature warning lamp.....	44
switching on.....	76	Entering the vehicle	
E		entry and exit mode.....	22
Electric parking brake.....	80	global opening.....	6
Electric seats.....	13	keyless entry.....	6
head restraints.....	19	passive entry.....	6
position memory.....	14	Ethanol.....	184
recalling a memory position.....	15	Event data recording.....	241
restricted seat travel.....	15	Executive class rear seats.....	16
Electric windows		massage.....	17
operation.....	60	passenger seat away.....	14
Electronic brake force distribution.....	79	Exhaust filter.....	194

Index

Exhaust fluid	
diesel.....	185
Exiting the vehicle	
arming the alarm.....	12
closing mislock.....	10
door locks and release levers.....	9
double locking.....	9
emergency locking.....	12
full alarm.....	10
global closing.....	10
interior locks.....	9
keyless locking.....	10
lock confirmation.....	9
passive arming.....	11
perimeter alarm.....	11
single locking.....	9
Exterior cleaning.....	199
Exterior lamps	
bulb changing.....	196
Exterior mirrors	
electric.....	56
manual.....	56
mirror dip when reversing.....	57
External temperature	
warning lamp.....	46
Extinguisher.....	198
F	
Fire extinguisher.....	198
First aid kit.....	198
Flat spots.....	229
Fluids	
brake	
check.....	208
specification.....	209
top up.....	209
capacities.....	249
coolant	
specification.....	208
top up.....	208
engine oil	
check.....	205
filler locations.....	203
oil	
top up.....	207
power steering	
check.....	209
specification.....	210
top up.....	210
specifications.....	245
washer fluid.....	211
check.....	210
specification.....	211
Fog lamps	
warning lamps	
rear.....	46
Folding table.....	17
Follow	
override.....	84
Follow mode	
entering.....	83
gap change.....	84
gap changing.....	84
override.....	85
resume.....	85
Forward alert.....	87
Forward alert in ACC	
object detection.....	87
Forward alert warning lamp.....	47
Front airbags.....	37
Front climate control	
automatic recirculation.....	138
Front wipers	
winter park position.....	197
Fuel and refuelling.....	188
consumption.....	190
diesel.....	185
diesel fuel sulphur content.....	185
ethanol.....	184
filler flap.....	188
fuel filler flap.....	188
methanol.....	185
methyl tertiary butyl ether (MTBE).....	185
misfuel device.....	188
octane rating.....	184
petrol.....	184
running out.....	187

Index

- safety precautions.....184
- tank capacity.....189
- water in fuel.....187
- Fuel can.....187
- Fuel consumption.....190
 - combined cycles.....192
 - extra-urban cycle.....192
 - urban cycle.....192
- Fuel filler flap.....188
- Fuel gauge.....40
- Fuel system.....195
- Fuel tank
 - capacity.....249
- Full screen view for video.....125
- Fuses
 - changing.....216
 - engine compartment fuse box.....218
 - locations.....216
 - luggage compartment fuse box.....223
 - passenger compartment fuse box.....220
- G**
 - Garage door opener.....58
 - assistance.....59
 - erase all programming.....59
 - programming.....58
 - programming a single button.....59
 - Garage door transceiver.....58
 - Gearbox
 - automatic.....74
 - gear shift warning lamp.....47
 - identification number.....243
 - limp home mode.....75
 - Glass cleaning.....199
 - Global closing.....10
 - Global opening.....6
 - Glow plugs
 - warning lamp.....46
- H**
 - Handbook symbols.....2
 - Handbrake.....80
 - Headlamps.....49
 - adaptive.....50
 - approach lamps.....50
 - beam pattern.....51
 - bulb changing.....196
 - condensation.....51
 - daytime running lamps.....49
 - driving abroad.....51
 - high beam assist.....50
 - high beam assist warning lamp.....47
 - high beam warning lamp.....47
 - warning lamp (AFS).....45
 - washers.....55
 - xenon.....196
- Head restraints
 - active.....35
 - electric seats.....19
 - front seats.....19
 - rear seats.....20
 - removing.....21
- Heated steering wheel.....22
- Heating and ventilation
 - air quality sensor.....138
 - automatic recirculation.....138
 - climate seats.....142
 - front.....136
 - heated seats.....141
 - rear.....139
- High beam assist.....50
- Hill start assist.....79
- Homelink.....58
 - assistance.....59
 - erase all programming.....59
 - programming.....58
 - programming a single button.....59
 - programming the garage door opener.....58
- I**
 - Identifying the vehicle
 - transmission number.....243
 - Ignition
 - rolling re-start.....71
 - switching on.....70
 - InControl
 - apps.....182

Index

connected navigation.....	171	fuel range.....	42
connectivity.....	177	lamp test.....	44
overview.....	179	menu.....	41
pro services.....	182	driving features.....	41
protect.....	179	instrument display.....	41
remote premium.....	180	trip computer.....	41
secure.....	181	vehicle set-up.....	41
Indicators warning lamp.....	47	recommended tyre pressures.....	232
Information messages.....	41, 44	service indicator.....	43
Infotainment		trip computer.....	42
audio settings.....	109	trip distance.....	42
loading discs.....	109	tyre pressure check.....	231
Infotainment		warning lamps.....	44
automatic station retune.....	115	warning messages.....	41
connecting a media device.....	119	Intelligent emergency braking	
DAB radio		ACC.....	88
settings.....	117	Intelligent stop/start	
DAB radio controls.....	116	activating.....	72
deploying the rear seat screens.....	133	deactivating.....	72–73
dual view.....	130	warning lamp.....	46
controls.....	130	Intelligent stop/start warning lamp.....	47
DVD player controls.....	128	Interior cleaning.....	200–201
full screen view.....	125	airbag covers.....	202
headphones.....	132	carpets and mats.....	202
importing/ripping media.....	123	Interior lamps.....	52
media controls.....	107	bulb changing.....	196
media player controls.....	124	types.....	52
portable media		Interior locking.....	9
changing.....	123	Instrument panel menu	
connecting multiple devices.....	122	navigation information.....	171
connections.....	118	ISOFIX installation.....	32
controls.....	120		
pairing.....	122	J	
playing.....	121	Jump starting	
radio controls.....	114	connecting a starting aid.....	214
touch screen		connecting jump leads.....	213
care.....	101	disconnecting jump leads.....	214
extra features.....	104		
home menu.....	100	K	
my home screen.....	102	Keyless entry.....	6
operating.....	101	Keyless locking.....	10
TV controls.....	126		
Instrument panel.....	40, 201		
display units.....	43		

Index

L

Label locations.....	243
Lamps.....	49
auto lamps wiper detection.....	50
brake lamp.....	197
bulb changing.....	196
bulb replacement.....	196
condensation.....	51
rear lamp removal.....	197
test.....	44
TPMS warning lamp.....	47
warning lamps.....	44
xenon headlamps.....	196
Leather cleaning.....	200
Licensing	
audio/video.....	110
Lighting	
interior lamps locations.....	52
Limp home mode.....	75
Load securing.....	67
Loadspace	
emergency release.....	67
Locking	
automatic relocking.....	11
confirmation.....	9
door locks and release levers.....	9
double locking.....	9
drive away.....	6
emergency locking.....	12
global closing.....	10
in an emergency.....	12
keyless.....	10
mislock.....	10
security sensor fault.....	12
single.....	9
with the emergency key.....	12
Locking wheel nuts.....	239
Low fuel warning lamp.....	46
Low oil pressure warning lamp.....	44
Lubricants specifications.....	245
Luggage compartment	
access with a discharged battery.....	68
anchor points.....	67

closing.....	65
emergency release.....	67
opening.....	65
opening height.....	66

M

Maintenance	
arduous driving conditions.....	195
brake fluid level.....	208
bulb changing.....	196
rear lamp removal.....	197
capacities.....	249
changing a fuse.....	216
checking tyre pressure after a repair.....	235
cleaning	
alloy wheels.....	199
exterior.....	199
glass.....	199
interior.....	200–201
leather.....	200
rear screen.....	200
seat belts.....	202
sensors and cameras.....	199
the engine compartment.....	199
closing the bonnet.....	195
daily checks.....	194
disconnecting jump leads.....	214
engine compartment fuse box.....	218
engine coolant level.....	207
engine oil level.....	205
fuel system.....	195
fuse box (passenger compartment).....	220
jump starting.....	214
label locations.....	243
lubricants and fluid specifications.....	245
luggage compartment access with a discharged battery.....	68
luggage compartment fuse box.....	223
oil top up.....	207
paintwork repair.....	199
polishing.....	200
power steering fluid level.....	209
removing grease and tar.....	200
removing stains.....	201

Index

- running-in.....193
- side window blind reset.....198
- smart key battery.....7
- sunroof wind deflector.....200
- tyre repair kit.....233
- tyre repair procedure.....234
- using a starting aid.....214
- washer fluid level.....210
- weekly checks.....194
- Manual seats
 - head restraints.....19
- Map
 - auto zoom.....169
 - split screen.....168
 - updates.....170
- Massage seats.....142
- Media
 - audio settings.....109
 - automatic station retune.....115
 - conversation assist.....110
 - DVD player controls.....128
 - end user licensing agreement.....110
 - licensing.....112
 - loading discs.....109
 - media controls.....107
 - portable media
 - connecting a media device.....119
 - importing/ripping media.....123
 - radio controls.....114
 - rear media
 - headphones.....132
 - home screen.....135
 - video media player controls.....124
- Message centre display units.....43
- Methanol.....185
- Minor paintwork repairs.....199
- Mirrors
 - blind spot monitor.....93–95
 - dip when reversing.....57
 - exterior mirrors.....56
- Misfuel device.....188
- Modes
 - driving.....90
 - winter.....90
- Mpg.....190
- N**
 - Navigation
 - address entry.....165
 - alerts.....170
 - approach mode.....172
 - connected navigation.....171
 - door to door routing.....173
 - edit route.....169
 - from the rear seats.....168
 - fuel finder.....171
 - fuel prices service.....172
 - instrument panel view.....171
 - main menu
 - search.....166
 - map
 - auto zoom.....169
 - split screen.....168
 - updates.....170
 - menu.....165
 - my commute.....171
 - online routing.....173
 - online service.....172
 - operating.....162
 - overview.....162
 - profiles.....173
 - real time traffic flow.....172
 - route planning web portal.....173
 - safety cameras.....173
 - satellite view.....173
 - search.....166
 - settings.....169
 - share.....173
 - view options.....169
 - your favourites.....170
- O**
 - Obstructing the airbag.....36
 - Occupant safety
 - child seat tether straps.....33
 - cleaning seat belts.....202
 - recommended child seats.....31

Index

seat belt checks.....	26	reverse traffic detection.....	150
seat belt pre-tensioners.....	25	sensors.....	151
seat belt reminder warning.....	26	single rear camera.....	152
seat belt safety.....	25	system fault.....	146
seat belts warning lamp.....	45	using.....	145
using seat belts.....	23	Parking brake.....	80
Octane rating.....	184	warning lamp.....	45
petrol.....	184	Particle filter.....	194
Oil		Parts.....	193
engine oil specification.....	207	Passenger compartment fuse box.....	220
filler locations.....	203	Passive alarm arming.....	11
specification.....	245	Passive entry.....	6
top up.....	207	Pedestrian protection system.....	241
used engine oil.....	195	after deployment.....	241
One-touch operation (windows).....	61	Perimeter alarm.....	11
Opening the bonnet.....	195	Petrol	
Opening the luggage compartment.....	65	fuel types.....	184
Oversteer.....	76	Petrol consumption.....	190
Overview		Petrol filler flap.....	188
InControl mobile technology.....	179	Phone	
Owner maintenance.....	194	Bluetooth compatibility.....	157
P		call volume.....	159
Paddle shift.....	75	compatibility list.....	157
Paintwork		contacts.....	159
cleaning.....	199	icons.....	158
repair.....	199	InControl.....	180
Pairing		managing two calls.....	158
via the phone.....	157	merge calls.....	158
Park assist		microphone volume.....	159
cleaning sensors and cameras.....	199	overview.....	156
limitations.....	149	pairing via the phone.....	157
options.....	147	steering wheel controls.....	159
selecting.....	148	Phone safety.....	157
troubleshooting.....	149	Polishing the bodywork.....	200
using.....	148	Portable media	
Parking aids		Bluetooth wireless technology.....	161
adjusting the volume.....	146	changing device.....	123
cleaning sensors and cameras.....	199	connecting a media device.....	119
park assist.....	147	connecting multiple devices.....	122
limitations.....	149	connections.....	118
selecting.....	148	controls.....	120
troubleshooting.....	149	importing/ripping media.....	123
using.....	148	pairing.....	122
		playing.....	121

Index

- Power sockets.....64
- Power steering
fluid
specification.....210
fluid level.....209
- Pressure checking (tyres)
checking after a repair.....235
- Pressures
tyres.....227
- Progress control
overview.....97
settings.....98
using the system.....97
- Progress control warning lamp.....46
- Puncture repair kit.....233
instructions for use.....233
repair procedure.....234
safety.....233
- Q**
- Queue assist (ACC).....85
- R**
- Radio
automatic station retune.....115
DAB
settings.....117
DAB controls.....116
- Radio frequency regulations.....251
- Rain sensor.....55
- Rear fog lamps warning lamp.....46
- Rear lamp
bulb changing.....197
removal.....197
- Rear media
deploying the rear seat screens.....133
headphones.....132
home screen.....135
remote control
batteries.....134
remote control use.....133
screens overview.....135
touch screen controls.....108
- Rear screen cleaning.....200
- Rear seat entertainment
deploying the screens.....133
headphones.....132
home screen.....135
remote control.....133
remote control batteries.....134
- Rear seats
executive class.....16
massage seats.....17
executive class seats.....14
folding table.....17
passenger seat away.....14
position memory.....16
safety.....17
- Rear seat screens
home menu.....135
navigation.....168
overview.....135
rear climate.....139
- Rear window blind.....60
- Recalling seat memory position.....15
- Recommended tyre pressures.....232
- Recording
event data.....241
service data.....241
- Recovery
towing eyes.....240
transporting.....240
- Refuelling
diesel.....185
diesel fuel sulphur content.....185
ethanol.....184
fuel filler flap.....188
methanol.....185
MTBE.....185
octane rating.....184
petrol.....184
running out of fuel.....187
safety precautions.....184
- Reminder (seat belt).....26
- Remote control
batteries.....134
care.....7

Index

- driving position memory.....14
- rear media.....133
- single locking.....9
- smart key battery.....7
- system transmitters.....250
- Removing a rear head restraint.....21
- Removing stains.....201
- Repairing paintwork damage.....199
- Replacement tyres.....229
- Resetting the windows.....197
- Restarting the engine while moving.....71
- Restricted seat travel.....15
- Resume speed and follow mode (ACC).....85
- Reverse parking aids
 - adjusting the volume.....146
 - parking aid system fault.....146
 - reverse traffic detection.....150
 - sensors.....151
 - using.....145
- Road sign recognition.....92
- Rolling re-start.....71
- Rotary gear selector.....75
- Running-in.....193
- Running out of fuel.....187
- S**
- Safety
 - child safety locks.....28
 - cleaning seat belts.....202
 - fuel and refuelling.....184
 - seat belt checks.....26
 - seat belt pre-tensioners.....25
 - seat belt reminder warning.....26
 - seat belts.....25
 - seat belts warning lamp.....45
 - seats for larger children.....32
 - sitting correctly.....15
 - tyre care.....227
 - tyre pressures.....227
 - used engine oil.....195
 - using seat belts.....23
 - using the phone.....157
 - warning triangle.....198
- Safety in the garage
 - battery precautions.....195
 - electrical components.....195
 - engine fans.....195
 - exhaust gases.....195
 - hot components.....195
 - jacking.....195
- Satellite navigation
 - address entry.....165
 - alerts.....170
 - approach mode.....172
 - connected navigation.....171
 - door to door routing.....173
 - edit route.....169
 - fuel finder.....171
 - fuel prices service.....172
 - instrument panel view.....171
 - map
 - auto zoom.....169
 - split screen.....168
 - updates.....170
 - menu.....165
 - my commute.....171
 - online routing.....173
 - online service.....172
 - operating.....162
 - overview.....162
 - profiles.....173
 - real time traffic flow.....172
 - route planning web portal.....173
 - safety cameras.....173
 - satellite view.....173
 - search.....166
 - settings.....169
 - share.....173
 - view options.....169
 - your favourites.....170
- Screen wash
 - check.....210
 - specification.....245
 - topping up.....211
- Seat belts.....23, 202
 - adjusting.....23
 - checks.....26

Index

pre-tensioners.....	25	closing mislock.....	10
reminder warning.....	26	deactivating the alarm.....	11
safety.....	25	lock confirmation.....	9
warning lamp.....	45	locking with the emergency key.....	12
Seats		perimeter alarm.....	11
child restraint check list.....	32	single locking.....	9
child seat positioning.....	29	Security sensors	
child seats.....	28	fault.....	12
child seat tether straps.....	33	Sensors	
cleaning seat belts.....	202	blockage.....	95
climate seats.....	142	Sequential shift.....	74
comfort and adjustment.....	141	Service interval indicator.....	43
electric front.....	13	Servicing	
electric front head restraints.....	19	airbags.....	38
executive class rear.....	16	data recording.....	241
massage seats.....	17	Set speed limit.....	81
executive rear seats.....	14	Settings	
front head restraints.....	19	audio.....	109
heated.....	141	general.....	106
ISOFIX installation.....	32	guidance	
passenger seat away.....	14	navigation system.....	169
position memory.....	14	system.....	106
rear folding table.....	17	Settings menu.....	41
rear head restraints.....	20	display units.....	43
rear seat position memory.....	16	Side airbags.....	37
rear seat safety.....	17	Side lamps warning lamp.....	47
rear seat screens overview.....	135	Side window blind	
recalling a memory position.....	15	reset.....	198
recommended child seats.....	31	Side window blinds.....	61
remote seats.....	144	Sign recognition.....	92
settings.....	144	Silencing the alarm.....	11
removing a rear head restraint.....	21	Sim card	
restricted seat travel.....	15	connecting.....	178
seat belts warning lamp.....	45	Sitting correctly.....	15
seat comfort and adjustment.....	15	Smart key	
seat massage.....	142	approach lamps.....	50
sitting correctly.....	15	battery changing.....	7
Securing luggage.....	67	care.....	7
Security.....	10	driving position memory.....	14
alarm.....	193	single locking.....	9
tilt sensor.....	11	transmitters.....	250
automatic perimeter alarm.....	11	Smartphone	
automatic relocking and arming.....	11	InControl.....	180
battery backed sounder.....	11	InControl app.....	179, 182

Index

InControl protect link.....	179	Steering wheel controls	
Snow chains.....	230	speed limiter.....	81
SOS emergency call		Stolen vehicle	
InControl protect link.....	179	InControl secure.....	181
Specifications		Stop/start	
capacities.....	249	activating.....	72
dimensions.....	247	deactivating.....	72–73
engine.....	244	Storage compartments.....	63
ethanol.....	184	cup holders.....	63
fluids.....	245	front cubby box.....	63
fuel tank capacity.....	189	rear armrest.....	63
label locations.....	243	Storage compartments areas	
lubricants.....	245	glove box.....	63
methanol.....	185	Sun blind.....	60
MTBE.....	185	Sun blinds	
weight.....	246	side windows.....	61
Speed-dependent wipers.....	55	Sunroof	
Speed limiting.....	81	anti-trap protection.....	62
Speedometer.....	40	reset.....	197
Split screen map.....	168	Supplementary restraint system (SRS)	
SRS.....	35	airbag deployment.....	38
airbag warning lamp.....	46	airbag locations.....	35
Stability control		airbags maintenance.....	193
active differential.....	76	airbag warning lamp.....	38, 46
DSC.....	76	curtain airbags.....	37
switching between DSC and tracDSC.....	76	front airbags.....	37
switching on.....	76	side airbags.....	37
switching off.....	76	Surround cameras.....	153
tracDSC.....	76	touch screen menu.....	153
Starting after a collision.....	241	Suspension	
Starting the engine.....	70	adaptive dynamics.....	78
failure to start.....	71	Switch cleaning.....	200
keyless start backup.....	71	Switching off the engine.....	70
Status icons		Switching on the ignition.....	70
touch screen.....	101		
Steering column		T	
lock.....	7	Table.....	17
vehicle recovery.....	7	Tachometer.....	40
Steering wheel		Technical specifications	
adjusting.....	22	brake fluid.....	245
AUTO position.....	22	capacities.....	249
audio controls.....	108	dimensions.....	247
heated.....	22	engine.....	244
		engine coolant.....	245

Index

engine oil.....	245	portable media playing.....	121
radio frequency regulations.....	251	rear media control.....	108
washer fluid.....	245	rear seat screen	
weights.....	246	seat comfort.....	17
Telephone		remote seats.....	144
Bluetooth compatibility.....	157	seat comfort and adjustment.....	15
Bluetooth wireless technology.....	161	seat settings.....	144
call volume.....	159	status icons.....	101
contacts.....	159	surround cameras.....	153
icons.....	158	system settings.....	106
managing two calls.....	158	touch screen care.....	101
merge calls.....	158	TV controls.....	126
microphone volume.....	159	valet mode.....	104
overview.....	156	deselecting.....	104
pairing		video player controls.....	124
via the phone.....	157	Tow eye (front).....	240
steering wheel controls.....	159	Towing	
Telephone safety.....	157	eyes.....	240
Television		tracDSC	
controls.....	126	stability control.....	76
Tilt sensor.....	11	Tracking your vehicle	
Touch screen.....	201	InControl secure.....	181
changing portable media device.....	123	Traction control	
connecting multiple portable media		switching between DSC and tracDSC.....	76
devices.....	122	switching off.....	76
connectivity settings.....	177	switching on.....	76
DAB radio controls.....	116	tracDSC.....	76
dual view.....	130	Traffic sign recognition.....	92
dual view controls.....	130	Transmission	
editing screens.....	102	automatic.....	74
editing shortcuts.....	102	gear shift warning lamp.....	47
editing widgets.....	102	identification number.....	243
extra features.....	104	limp home mode.....	75
general settings.....	106	Transmitters	
heated seats.....	141	smart key.....	250
home menu.....	100	Transporting the vehicle.....	240
inhibited display.....	125	Trip computer.....	42
massage seats.....	142	average speed.....	42
my home screen.....	102	fuel consumption.....	42
operating.....	101	fuel range.....	42
portable media		reset.....	42
controls.....	120	trip distance.....	42
portable media connections.....	118	TV	
portable media pairing.....	122	controls.....	126

Index

- dual view.....130
- dual view controls.....130
- Tyre pressure checking after a repair.....235
- Tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....231
 - tyre care.....227
 - valves.....229
 - warning lamp.....47
- Tyre repair kit
 - checking pressures.....235
 - repair procedure.....234
 - safety information.....233
 - using.....233
- Tyres
 - age degradation.....229
 - changing.....232
 - flat spots.....229
 - important information.....239
 - Indian regulations.....230
 - pressure check.....231
 - pressures.....227
 - recommended tyre pressure look-up.....232
 - repair kit.....233
 - repair kit use.....233
 - repair procedure.....234
 - replacements.....229
 - snow chains.....230
 - speed ratings.....227
 - temporary use spare.....232
 - TPMS.....231
 - warning lamp.....47
 - tyre care.....227
 - tyre repair safety.....233
 - tyre wall markings.....226
 - use of spare tyre.....239
 - valves.....229
 - wall markings.....226
 - winter.....229
- U**
 - Under bonnet covers.....196
 - Understeer.....76
 - Unlocking.....9
 - all doors.....4
 - driver's door.....4
 - entry and exit mode.....22
 - global opening.....4, 6
 - keyless entry.....6
 - luggage compartment emergency
 - release.....67
 - mode.....4
 - multi point entry.....4
 - passive entry.....6
 - single point entry.....4
- USB devices
 - connecting multiple devices.....122
- Used engine oil.....195
- Using adaptive cruise control.....83
- Using cruise control.....82
- Using the spare tyre
 - important information.....239
- V**
 - Valet mode.....104
 - deselecting.....104
 - Vehicle alarm.....193
 - Vehicle battery
 - battery monitoring system.....213
 - connecting jump leads.....213
 - replacing.....215
 - warning symbols.....212
 - Vehicle battery care.....212
 - Vehicle build date.....243
 - Vehicle cleaning
 - airbag covers.....202
 - alloy wheels.....199
 - automatic car wash.....199
 - carpets and mats.....202
 - engine compartment.....199
 - interior.....200–201
 - rear screen.....200
 - sunroof.....200
 - washer jets.....196
 - Vehicle data recording.....241
 - Vehicle identification
 - transmission number.....243
 - Vehicle location
 - InControl secure.....181

Index

- Vehicle recovery
 - attaching the front tow eye.....240
 - steering column lock.....7
 - towing eyes.....240
 - transporting the vehicle.....240
- Video media player
 - controls.....124
 - dual view.....130
 - controls.....130
 - full screen view.....125
 - inhibited display.....125
- VIN number.....243
- Voice control.....175
 - settings
 - command list.....176
 - operating guide.....176
 - preferences.....176
 - voicetags.....176
 - voice training.....176
 - tutorial.....175
 - voicetags.....176
- W**
- Warning lamps.....44
 - ABS.....45
 - ACC follow mode.....46
 - adaptive front lighting system (AFS).....45
 - airbags.....38, 46
 - audible warnings and indicators.....48
 - automatic speed limiter.....46
 - battery charge.....45
 - brake.....44–45
 - critical warning message.....44
 - cruise control.....47
 - diesel glow plugs.....46
 - DSC active.....46
 - engine/transmission.....45
 - engine temperature.....44
 - external temperature.....46
 - forward alert.....47
 - gear shift warning lamp.....47
 - headlamp high beam.....47
 - high beam assist.....47
 - indicators.....47
 - intelligent stop/start (amber).....46
 - intelligent stop/start (green).....47
 - lamp test.....44
 - low fuel.....46
 - low oil pressure.....44
 - parking brake.....45
 - progress control system.....46
 - rear fog lamps.....46
 - seat belt.....45
 - side lights.....47
 - tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS).....47
- Warning messages.....41
- Warning triangle.....198
- Washer jets.....196
- Washer reservoir
 - capacity.....249
- Washers.....54
 - fluid specification.....211
 - fluid top up.....211
 - headlamps.....55
- Washing
 - automatic car wash.....199
 - exterior paintwork.....199
 - removing grease.....200
 - removing stains.....201
 - removing tar.....200
 - soft top.....200
- Water in fuel.....187
- Weights
 - gross vehicle weights.....246
 - roof load.....246
 - roof rack weight.....246
 - vehicle weights.....246
- Wheel changing
 - important information.....239
 - locking wheel nuts.....239
 - recommended process.....238
 - safety warnings.....237
 - tilt sensor.....238
 - use of spare tyre.....239
- Wheels and tyres
 - age degradation.....229
 - changing a tyre.....232



Index

checking the pressures after a repair.....	235
flat spots.....	229
Indian regulations.....	230
pressures.....	227
puncture repair.....	233
puncture repair safety.....	233
repair kit.....	233
repair kit use.....	233
repair procedure.....	234
replacements.....	229
snow chains.....	230
temporary use spare.....	232
TPMS.....	231
TPMS warning lamp.....	47
tyre care.....	227
tyre speed ratings.....	227
tyre wall markings.....	226
valves.....	229
winter tyres.....	229
Wheel spin.....	76
Wi-Fi connection icons.....	178
Windows	
anti-trap protection.....	62
one-touch operation.....	61
operation.....	60
reset.....	197
side window blinds.....	61
sunroof reset.....	197
Winter park position.....	197
Winter tyres.....	229
Wipers.....	54
Wipers and washers.....	54
fluid level.....	210
rain sensor.....	55
speed-dependent mode.....	55
Wireless technology	
Bluetooth.....	161

X

Xenon headlamps.....	196
----------------------	-----

FOR REFERENCE ONLY
24.07.2015

Controls overview

DRIVER CONTROLS

Note: Information in brackets refers to the page where additional information can be found.

1. InControl Protect- Breakdown call (179).
2. Sunroof (60).
3. Rear screen sun blind (60).
4. Rear sunroof blind (60).
5. InControl Protect- SOS Emergency call (179).
6. Front sunroof blind (60).
7. Parking Aid (145).
8. Front courtesy/reading lamps (52).
9. Indicator/headlamp controls (49).
10. Gearshift down (74).
11. Instrument panel (41).
12. Gearshift up (74).
13. Wiper/washers controls (54).
14. START/STOP button (70).
15. Touch screen (100).
16. Glovebox release (63).
17. Climate controls (136).
18. Rotary gear selector (75).
19. Stability control (DSC & TracDSC) (90).
20. Automatic Speed Limiter (ASL) (81).
21. Electric Parking Brake (EPB) (80).
22. Progress control (97).
23. Driving modes (90).
24. Dual view (130) or Audio settings (109).
25. **SEAT COMFORT** menu (141).
26. Hazard warning lamps on/off.
27. **FRONT CLIMATE** menu (136).
28. Intelligent stop/start (72).
29. **NAVIGATION** menu (165).
30. **PHONE** menu (156).
31. **MEDIA** menu (107).
32. Surround camera system (153).
33. Touch screen **HOME** menu (100).
34. Touch screen on/off (100) or Park assist on/off (148).
35. CD/DVD eject (107).
36. Audio on/off and volume (107).
37. Instrument menu controls (41).
38. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (83).
39. Cruise control (82).
40. Horn/airbag.
41. Steering column adjuster (22).
42. Phone (159) and Voice controls (175).
43. Heated steering wheel (22).
44. Audio/video controls (108).
45. Instrument illumination - rotate to adjust.
46. Bonnet release (195).
47. Fog lamps on/off.
48. Luggage compartment release (65).
49. Driving position memory (14).
50. Central unlocking (6).
51. Central locking (6).
52. Mirror adjuster/powerfold mirror (56).
53. Window controls (60).
54. Rear window/rear sunroof blind isolator (60).

